











EPB 7425/B

[²
4634]

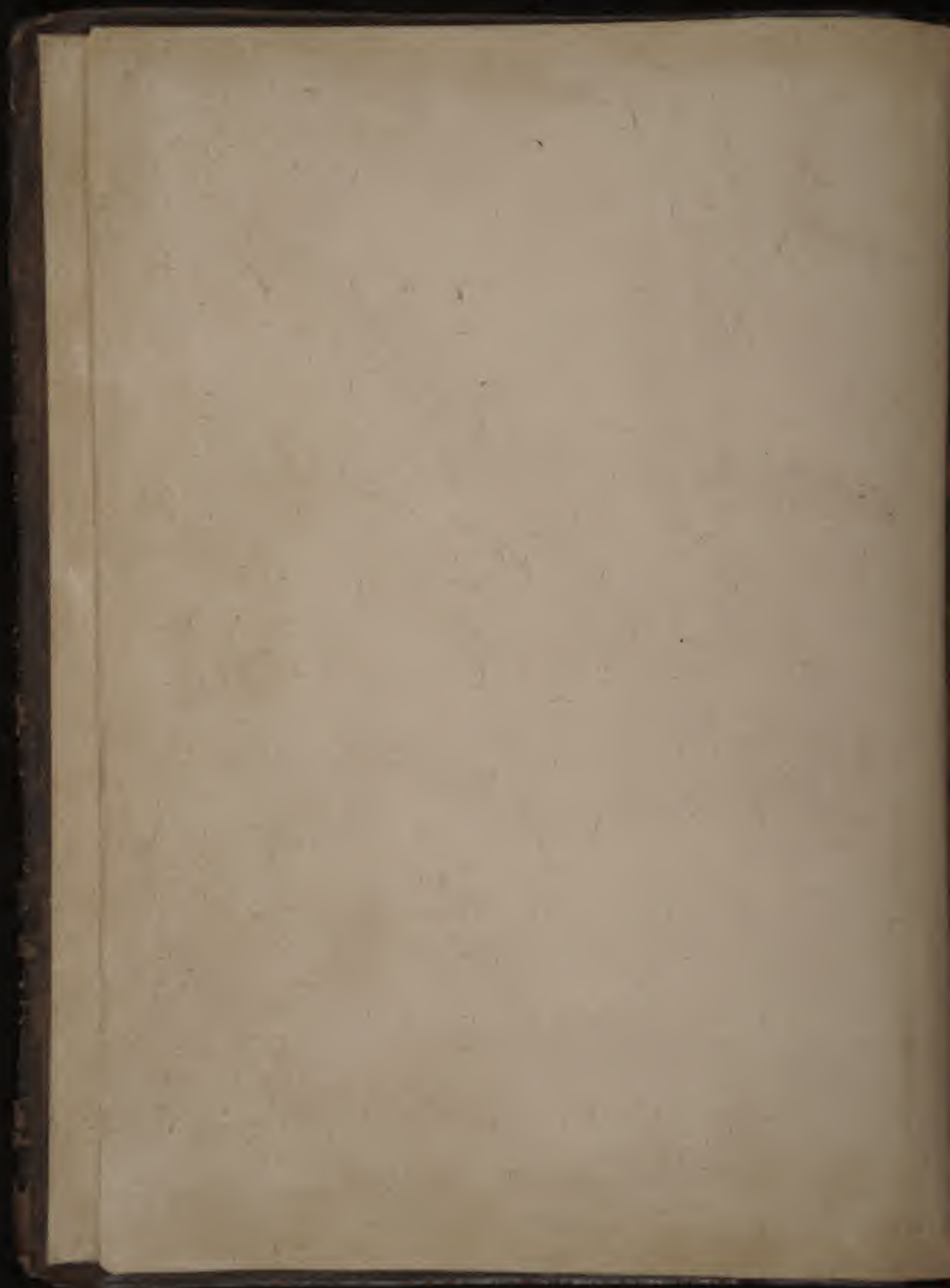
£6,500 - 00 (2)

FOLDING PLATE WITH 9 SIGNS
4 PLATE (12 LEAVES) 11 PLATE
PLATE

[10] = 131 [132] LEAVES

FOLDING PLATE WITH NEAT REPAIR.
affecting page, repair to corner of
the touching image and last leaf,
paper from to FS verso, affecting 8 lines
of text, R3 marginal tear, NE closed
tear affecting printed text in margin
on verso, DE closed tear affecting line
of text, H1-6 paper cut affecting 6 lines of
text, S7 marginal paper from with loss,
NE affecting text, I1, 14, 236
corner torn away, not affecting
text, very small worm hole to inner
margin, occasional entry into
margin etc.

4-25





Printed by I. I. I.
The birth of

mankynde, other
wylse named the
womans booke.

Newly set forth, corrected, and
augmented. Whose con-
tentes ye may reade in
the Table of the
booke, and
most
playnely in the
prologue.

By Thomas Raynalde
Phisition. 1565





Be it some Aristar-
 chus maye perhappes
 fynde some lacke of
 faythfulnesse and dili-
 gence in this worke:
 yet ther is none so fro-
 ward to denie but that
 there is some fruite &
 profyte to bee founde
 therein, seying that it
 commeth now abrode
 much more enlarged &
 encreased, and inoze di-
 ligently corrected then

it was befoze eyther in the Latine oz in the Englyshe. And
 where befoze in the other pyn-tes, there lacked matter neces-
 sarie to the openyng and declaracion of the figures pertey-
 nyng to the inner partes: it is nowe so playnely set forth,
 that the simplest mydwyfe which can reade, maye both un-
 derstande for her better instruction, and also other women
 that haue neede of her helpe, the moze commoditie.

Wherfoze my desyre is, that it may be receyued

and practised of mydwyues and all other

matrones, with no lesse successe,

then it is with good wyll

and desyre writ-

ten to pro-

fite

and to do good

to other.

The Table of this present Booke.



First, a Prologue
to the women
readers.

In this first Cha-
piter is briefly
declared the con-
tentes of the
firſte Booke.

Capit. i.

In howe manye
coates the body
is lapped or in-

ſol. i.

uolued. Cap. ii.

Here is declared what the Muskles be.

Cap. iii.

ſol. iiii.

Of the kell called Peritonium. Cap. iiii. ſol. v.

The declaration of the names and nature of
the matrix. Cap. v. ſol. vi.

Of the wombe & his partes. Cap. vi. ſol. vii.

Of the mother port. Cap. vii. ſol. x.

Of the veſſelles of ſeede, called the ſtones, with
other thereto apperteyning. Capit. viii.

ſolio.

xi.

Of the ſeede bryngers. Cap. ix. eodem.

Of the office and vſe of theſe ſeede bryngers.

Cap. x.

ſol. xiiii.

Of the way by the which the ſeede is ſent from
the ſtones, to the angles or corners of the
matrix. Cap. xi. ſol. xix.

Here is declared the ſituation of the bladder in
women. Cap. xii. ſol. xxi.

The Table.

Of the baynes which resort to the Matrix, and the partes therof. Item of the Termes and theyr course, with the causes thereof. Cap. xiii.	Fol. xxiiii.
Of the three calles or wrappers, wherin the infant is lapped. Cap. xiiii.	Fol. xxix.
Which of the three Matrix baynes conteine the Termes, and howe the mylke cometh to the womans brestes. Cap. xv.	Fol. xxxv.
The declaration by letters of the figures following, wherin be set forth to the eye euery part in woman, mentioned in this booke before.	
Of the first figure	Fol. xlii.
Of the seconde figure.	Fol. xlv.
Of the thirde figure.	Fol. xlvi.
The fourth figure.	Fol. xlvi.
The fyfth figure.	Fol. xlix.
The syxth figure.	eodem.
The. vii. viii. and. ix. figures.	Folio. l.

The Table of the seconde Booke.



Of the tyme of byrth, and whiche is called naturall or unnaturall. Cap. i.	Folio. li.
Of easy and breasy, difficult, or dolorous deliuerance, & the causes of it, with the signes howe to knowe and foresee the same. Cap. ii.	Fol. liii.
Howe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue barbe	

The Table.

- harde labour. Cap. iiii. fol. lviij.
- Remedies and medicines by the whiche the labour may be made tollerable, easye, & without great payne. Cap. v. fol. lxxij.
- Howe the secondine or seconde byrth shalbe forced to issue forth, yf it come not freely of his owne kynde. Cap. vi. fol. lxxvi.
- Howe many thynges chaunce to the women after theyr labour, & how to auoyde, defende, or to remedy the same. Cap. vii. fol. lxxx.
- Of aborcementes or vntymely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen, & eased. Cap. viii. fol. lxxxiiij.
- Of dead byrthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. ix. fol. xc.
- In the last Chapter of this booke be bryefely resited certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the chief purpose entended in this present booke. Cap. x. fol. xcviij.

The thirde Booke.



N this first Chapter of this thirde booke is first declared the matters therein conteyned, & then how the infant newly borne must be handled, noyrshed, and looked to. Cap. i. folio. xcviij. **A 3** **Of**

The Table.

Of the Nurse, and her mylke, and how long the chylde shoulde sucke. Capit. ii.	Fol. C.
Of diuers diseases & infirmities which chaunce to chyl dren lately borne, and the remedies therfore. Cap. iii.	Fol. Ciii.
Of the fixe or ouermuch loosenesse of the belly. folio.	Ciiii.
To vnlose the chylde, beyng bounde.	Fol. Cb.
Remedie for the cough and distillation or cattarrhes of the head.	Fol. Cbi.
Remedie for short wynde.	Fol. Cbii.
Against wheales or bladders on the tong. eodem.	
Of exulceration or clefture, chappnyng or chynnyng of the mouth.	Fol. Cbiii.
Of apostumation and runnyng of the eares. folio.	eodem.
Of apostumation in the head.	Fol. Cix.
Of the swelling or bolning of the eyes. eodem.	
Of the scumme or whyte of the eye. eodem.	
Agaynst immoderate heate of the feuer. eodem.	
Agaynst frettyng or gnawynge in the belly. folio.	Cx.
Agaynst swelling of the body. eodem.	
Agaynst often sneesynge. eodem.	
Of welkes in the body, and the cure. fol. Cxi.	
Agaynst swelling of the coddies. eodem.	
Agaynst swelling of the Naueil. eodem.	
Agaynst vnslieepinesse. fol. Cxii.	
Agaynst yeryng or the hickate. eodem.	
Agaynst often perbrakyng by weaknesse and feblenesse of the stomacke. fol. Cxiii.	
Against fearefull & terrible dreames. fol. Cxiiii.	
Agaynst	

The Table.

Agaynst issuing forth of the fundament gutte.	
folio.	eodem.
Agaynst Tenasmus.	eodem.
Agaynst wormes in the belly.	eodem.
Of chafyng or gallyng of any place of the body.	
folio.	Cxvi.
Of the fallyng sicknesse.	eodem.
Consumption or pynnyng away of the bodye.	
folio.	Cxvii.
Of lassitude, wearynesse, or heauinesse of the chylde's body.	eodem.
Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the palsy.	fol. Cxviii.
Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stoppyng of the brine.	eodem.
Of gogle eyes, or lokyng a squynt.	fol. Cxix.

The fourth Booke.



en. Cap. iii.

If suche thynges the which shalbe entreated of in this fourth booke. Cap. i. fol. Cxx
 Of conception, & how many wayes it may be hyndred or letted. Cap. ii. fol. eodem.
 Howe manye wayes conception maye be letted, and howe the causes maye be knowne. fol. Cxxi.
 Howe

The Table.

- Howe to know whether lacke of conception be
of the woman or of the man, and howe it
may be perceyued whether she be conceaued
or no. Capi. iiii. fol. Cxxiii.
- Of certayne remedies and medicines whiche
may farther the woman to conceiue. Cap. v.
fol. Cxxiiii.
- Of diuers bellyfying receptes. fol. Cxxvi.
- Of the causes and remedies for dandriffe of the
head. fol. Cxxvii.
- To take away heere from places where it is
vnseemely. fol. Cxxviii.
- To do away frekens or other spottes in the
face. fol. Cxxix.
- To destroy wartes and suche lyke excrescensis
on the face, or els where. eodem.
- To cleare and clarifie the skyn in the handes,
face, or other part of the body. fol. eodem.
- To souple and mollifie the ruggednes of the
skynne. fol. Cxxx.
- Agaynst sodayne rylnges of pimples through
vnkynde heate in the face or els where. eodem.
- To keepe and preserue the teeth cleane. eodem.
- Of stynkyng breath. fol. eodem.
- Of the ranke sauour of the armholes. eodem.

Here endeth the Table.

¶ A Prologue to the women readers.



Ere in the beginning of this present Prologue, I wil folow the example of them, whiche when they bid any gesses to dyner or supper, are wont first to declare, what shall be theyr chere, what fare, and howe many dishes they shall haue, pray-

ing them to take it in good worth, and to looke for neither better ne worse, then hath ben mentioned of. And euen so here wyll I do. Before that ye enter into the reading of this litle treatise, I shal succinctly & in fewe wordes recite the summe and chiefe contentes of the same, with the vtilitie and profit which may ensue, to the diligent and attentife ouerreader therof, to the ende that ye of these thinges beyng first wel aduertised, may haue the more or lesse courage to employ your labour in ouerlokyng & perusing of the same. For comonly it doth occasionate any man to be the more prompt, ready, and willing to take payne, when he is assured or certified of the profit, purpose, and fruite therof comming, and likewise it is a great prycke or allurement, entising and meuing a man, to reade any boke, when he is somewhat first admonished of the matters comprehended and contayned therein.

The entent
of thautour.

Wherefore nowe to come to our purpose, ye

Bi

shall

The Prologue.

The more
part of this
booke tran-
slated into
Englishe
thre or foure
yeres past.

*This author name
was Erasmus
Rudic. The name
who of this booke.
wrote it in Latin
& printed it at
Frankford
an. 1543.
Tho. Reynold.*

Tho. Reynold.

Shall vnderstande that about a thre or foure
yeres past, a certayne studious and diligent
clarke, at the request and desire of dyuers ho-
nest and sad matrones, beyng of his acquaint-
taunce, did translate out of Latin into English
a great part of this booke, entiteling it accor-
ding to the Latin inscription (*de partu hominis*, that
is to say: of the byrth of mankinde) whiche we
nowe do name (The womans booke) (for so
much as the most part, or well neare all there-
in entreated of, doth concerne and touche onely
women :) In whiche his translation he varied
or declined nothyng at all from the steppes of
his Latine aucthour, obseruyng more fidelitie
in translating, then choise or discretion at that
time in admitting and allowyng many thinges
in the same booke, greatly needing admonition
& wary aduise or counsell to the readers, which
otherwise might somtimes vse that for a helpe,
the which should turne to a hinderance. Where-
fore I reuoluing and earnestly reuising from
top to toe the said booke, and herewithal consi-
dering the manyfolde vtilitie and profit, which
thereby mought ensue to all women (as tou-
chyng that purpose) yf it were more narrowlye
looked ouer, and with a straighter iudgement
more exactly every thyng therein pondred and
tryed, thought my labour and paynes shoulde
not be euyl employed, ne vnthankefully accep-
ted and receyued of all honest, discrete and sage
women, yf I after good and diligent perusing
therof, did correct and amende suche faultes in
it.

The Prologue.

It, as seemed worthy of the same, and to advise the readers what thinges were good or intol-
erable to be vsed, whiche were daungerous, and
which were vtterly to be excyued. The whiche
thing I haue not onlye so done, but ouer this,
haue thereunto adioyned and annexed dyuers
other moze experimented and moze familier
medicines. And farther haue in the fyrst booke
set forth, and euidently declared, all the inward
partes of women (suche as were necessary to be
known to our purpose) and that not onlye in
wordes, but also in lyuely and expresse figures,
by the which euery part before in the booke de-
scribed, may in maner be as exactly and clearly
perceyued, as though ye were present at the
cutting open or Anothomie of a dead woman.
And thinke not the vtilitie and profite of this
first booke, and knowledge thereof to be lytle or
of smale value, but take it as the foundation
and ground, by the perceuerance wherof, your
wittes and vnderstandyng shalbe illuminate
and lyghtened, the better to vnderstande, howe
euery thing commeth to passe within your bo-
dyes in tyme of conception, of bearyng, and of
byrth. And farther, by the perfect knowledge of
this booke, ye shall clearly perceyue the reason
of many diseases whiche happen peculiarly to
women, and the causes therof, by whiche per-
ceyuerance, agayne ye shall haue the readyer
vnderstanding how to withstand & remedy the
sayd infirmities or diseases. For note ye well,
that as there is no man whatsoeuer he be, that

Many thinges annexed
and newly
added to
this booke.

The Con-
tentes of the
first booke.

Howe profit-
table the
first booke is

The vtilitie
of the perfect
knowledge
of Anotho-
mie.

The Prologue.

Shal become an absolute and perfect Physitian, vnlesse he haue an absolute and perfect knowledge, of all the inwardes & outwardes of mans & womans body: euen so shall ye neuer grounlye vnderstand the matters contayned in the seconde booke, or any other communication, or writing, touchyng the same intent, except ye first haue true and iust cognoissance in the first booke. Againe when that a woman commeth to a Physitian for counsell, concerning something that may be amisse in the part, the aunswere of the physitian and reasonable allegation of causes to the same infirmitie is many tymes obscure, darke & straunge, to be comprehended by the woman, for lacke of due knowledge of the situation, maner, & fashion of the inwardes. And truely when a person is sicke or diseased in any part, it is halfe a comfort, yea halfe his health to vnderstande in what part the disease is, & howe that part lieth in the body. This knowledge also ministreth yet a farther ingin and policie to inuent infinitely the better howe the medicine shuld be applied, & after the most profitable sort ministred & set to the diseased plot. To be short, all the wittines & artificiall craftie inuention, and diuers maners of ministrations in the noble science of phisicke, procedeth & springeth of the profounde knowledge of anothomie. Therefore mine aduise & vtter counsel is, that al women in whose handes this litle booke shall chaunce to come, with all diligence do force them selues perfectly to the vnderstanding of this first booke:
wel!

The coun-
saile of the
auctour to
the readers.

The Prologue.

well assuryng them that they shall not repent them of theyr small paynes bestowed in that behalfe. And to the end that euery thing might be the playner and more easy to attayne vnto, I haue at the latter end of the foresayde first booke, set the figures which represent such matters as were entreated of in the booke before, and also haue thereto annexed a sufficient declaration & exposition by letters, of all partes and parcels conteyned in the sayde figures.

In the seconde booke we shall declare the diuers sortes and maners of the deliuerance or birth of mankynde, and all the daungers, perils, & other cases happenyng to the labouryng woman at that season, with remedies and manyfolde medicines concernyng the same, where also we haue not omitted ne left out any medicine beyng first in the olde booke, but haue in manye places rectified and amended the same, accordyng to reason and the lawes of phisicke: and besydes this, haue added thereto diuers other salutarie and effectuall medicines, such as eyther I my selfe or other Phisitions beyng yet alvye at this day, haue experimented and practised. Furthermore, in this seconde booke ye may fynde dyuers remedies whereby to prouoke the termes or flowres (when that nedeth) or to restrayne or stoppe the same when they issue more largely then nature doth require, with many other matters, to long here to be rehearsed.

In the thirde booke shalbe entreated, of the election and choyse, by certayne signes and to-

The contentes of the seconde booke.

Many truely experimented medicines added to this booke.

Things entreated of in the thirde booke

The Prologue.

kenis of a good Nurse, whiche maye foster and
bryng by the chylde beyng borne. Item medi-
cines encreasynge, deminyshynge, attenuatynge,
engrossynge, and amendynge the mylke in the
Nurses brestes. Also remedies for many and
sundry diseases, which oft tymes chaunce vnto
infantes after theyr byrth.

What is con-
tyned in the
fourth booke.

In the fourth and last booke, we wyll some-
what commune of conception, with the causes
hynderynge or fartherynge the same, shewynge
certayne counsaile and remedies wherby by
the grace of God the vnfruitefull may be made
more fruitefull, and impedimentes of concepti-
on, by vertue of medicines, remoued and ouer-
come, the woman beyng made the more apt to
conceau. And farther, in this last booke shall
be vttered and sette forth certayne embellesh-
ynge receptes, concernynge only honest & health-
some decozation and clenlynesse, alwayes most
lowable and commendable in a woman, as to
scoure and clense the head, to cause the heere to
kepe his naturall colour, to preserue the heere
from fallyng away, to take awaye heere from
certayne places, where beyng, it causeth some
defoꝛmitie or vnseemelynesse in a person, to
subtyle and cleare the skynne in the face or o-
ther where, to remoue and do awaye spottes,
freckens, and other suche lyke displeasaunt
markes and tokens, to souple and mollifie the
skynne beyng rugged and rough, with other
mo suche lyke matters, to long here to be re-
hearsed, the whiche truely are not of any pru-
dent

The Prologue.


dent person to be reiected, improued, or dispraysed, forasmuche as I teache nothyng in that place, but that only which may make to the honest, comely, and commendable conseruyng and maynteynyng of the inset and naturall beautie in a woman, vtterly abhorryng and desying all fardyng, painting, and counterfait cast colours, which of some dampnable and misproude people be dayly bled, suche as by all meanes possible seke and searche more the abhominable and deuillish paynting & garish setting forth of their mortall carcases (the better therby to commend it vnto the eyes of foolyshe & fonde men) then by honest, sober, debonayre, & gentyl maners, so to demeane theyr lyfe, that they may therby rather obtayne the loue, amitie, and hartie perpetuall fauour first of God, & then of all honest, discrete, and godly wyse men. Thus nowe to be short, I haue in as compendious maner as the matter would suffer, set befoze your eyes the chiefe and principall contentes comprehended in this litle volume. And now remaineth there nothing els but only to require the beneuolent fauour and good acceptation of this my labour and paines spent in the compilyng of these foresayde matters, praying, that as it hath ben to me paynefull in the composyng therof, so it may be both pleasaunt and fruitfull to al women (for whose sake & only respect it is set forth) in the readyng therof. Howbeit, I am not ignorant ne vn sure that many there are, befoze whose syght this booke shall fynde small grace, and lesse fauour.

Against pain
tyng of wo
mens faces.

The beneuo
lencie of the
reader requi
red.

The Prologue.

Harde to
please many
iudgements.


The maner
of Poetes in
tymes past.

The difficul-
tie to concyle
the good wyl
of peruert
people.

So harde a thyng it is to wyte or endite any matter whatsoeuer it be, that should be able to sustayne and abide the variable iudgement, and to obtayne or wyne the constant loue and allowaunce of euery man, especiallye yf it containe in it any noueltie or vnwont strangenes. Therfore the auncient Poetes in tymes passed, when that they enterprysed any new or strange workes, were wont in the frunte of the same, with great protestation, to inuocate and call vpon all the goddes and goddesses by name, requiryng them fauourably to aspyre, ayde, and prosper their attempted purpose, to the ende that by theyr obteyned fauour, it myght be the more acceptable and gracious to all suche as shoulde it beholde and reade. Whose example ryght necessary and nedefull it were that I here shoulde deuoutly ensue and folowe, so that I coulde first beleue that by suche maner of inuocation, myght be allured and wonne the beneuolencie and wyllyng fauour of all suche in whose handes this present booke shoulde happen to fall. But truely I do suppose, that although I shoulde call downe all the nine noble Muses out of the famous mount of Hellicon, or praye to be assistent the three louyng graces, or great Apollo, god, maister, and chiefe inuentour of the nature of all hearbes and other medicines, or Esculapius chiefe patrone and president in the worthy science of Physicke, or wittie Mercurie with his doulce and sugred eloquencie, with sweete Suada, goddesse of al perswasion,
with

The Prologue.

with all other the goddes and goddesses what
euer they be, in whom ingenious Poetes do
saigne to be a maiestie, myght and power, to
encline the hartes of men for to delyte and take
pleasure in any such thyng whiche first shalbe
by theyr godhead allowed & fauoured. Though
(I say) all these shoulde firmly conspire in one
together, and bende them vtterly to the most of
theyr hygh puissaunce, to sacre, halowe, yea and
with theyr holy poetical spirite to breathe ouer
this booke, yet shoulde there be founde people
of so ingrate, straunge, peruers, and wayward
wyttes, that woulde (without all good reason)
blame and improue the same bnneth yet seene,
and much lesse read. For who be they that geue
so precipitat and heady iudgementes in all ma-
ner of matters, as such (for the more part) the
whiche therein shall haue least cognoissaunce
or knowledge, and take least payne in readyng
or searchyng the veritie of that thyng agaynst
the whiche they be moste stout, doubtie, and
bolde pronouncers. And this do I not say on-
lye of them, that peraduenture shall here and
there in the processe of this booke fynde any
perticuler matters to reprove, and carpe, some-
tymes worthly, and sometymes otherwyle:
but also, yea, and that muche more of them,
which generally without all exception, shall
condempne and vtterly reprove all the whole
matter, some alleagyng that it is shame, and
other some, that it is not meete ne syttyng
such

The lyght
iudgementes
of many men

*scribitur in
libro inimicorum
et in signis
caelorum*

Of them that
vtterly do con-
demne this
booke.

The Prologue.

such matters to be entreated of, so playnely in our mother and bulgare language, to the dishonour (as they say) of womanhead, and the derision of theyr wont secretes, by the detection and discoueryng whereof, men it readyng or hearyng, shalbe moued thereby the more to abhorre and lothe the company of women, and farther, in theyr communications to ieste and bourde of womens priuities, not wont to be knowen of them, with diuers other suche lyke cauillations and reasons: so that theyr opinion it is, that it were more expedient and better to suppressie and vtterly to condempne vnto darke-nesse for euer this booke, then to sende it forth into lyght. Loe, such is the lyght iudgement of them, the which in euery thyng, wherof may ensue both good and euyll, haue alwayes theyr eyes wakyng and firmly affixed and directed vppon the euyll, pyckyng and chosyng out the worst of euery matter, omittynge and leauyng to speake of the best, as the thyng whiche were nothyng to theyr purpose. If euery thyng in this worlde shoulde be wayed and passed vppon after this sort, then shoulde we be fayne to condempne and banyshe those thynges farre from vs, whiche are at this tyme accompted and taken for the most necessarie, worthy, and of greatest price or estimation. For to be short, there is nothyng vnder heauen so good, but that it may be peruerted and turned to an euyll vse, by them that be euyll and naught them selues,
and

Answer to
certayne ca-
uillations.

Nothyng so
good but it
may be abu-
sed.

The Prologue.

and do abuse it, ne is there any thyng so absolute and perfecte, but by the occasion of the abuse therof, at one tyme or other, may and doth ensue great daunger and damage to mankynde. Fyze and water be two right necessary elementes to the vse of man, without the whiche we coulde not lyue: yet by the meanes of them, many a miserable deede hath ben done and perpetrated. By fyze hath ben consumed and deuoured whole Cities and Countreys. By water, swallowed and drowned infinite men, Shippes, yea and whole regions. Agayne, meate and drynke, to the moderate vlers therof, doth minister and maynteyne lyfe: And contrary, to the vnrmeasurable and vnsaciast gourmauntes and gluttons, it hath full many thousand times brought surfettes, sickenesse, and at the laste death. By weapons, Realmes and Cities be defended from the iniurie and violencie of theyr fierce enemies, the true wayfaryng man, from the assaulte of the thiefe: Yea and many tymes cleane contrary, by weapons Realmes and Cities be subuerted and vtterlye destroyed, the true mans throte by the thiefe cutte. The most holpe and sacred Wyble teacheth nothyng but holynesse and vertuous lyuyng, charitie to God and to our neyghbour, reformation of our wicked lyuyng, and briefelye, the hve waye to GOD. The blessed Sacrament of the Altar was institute and ordeyned by our Sauour our Iesus Chryste, for a principall, earnest, lyuelye, and mooste presente consolation and comfort

Fyze and water abused.

Meate and drynke abused.

Weapons abused.

The Wyble abused.

The blessed Sacrament may be abused.

The Prologue.

and comfort of mans conscience, yet both holye Scripture, and also the foresayde holy Sacrament, haue ben, be, and wyl be, the confusion and condemnation of a great number of the abusers and indigne or vnworthy receyuers of them both. Shoulde men, for the auoydyng of these foresayde inconueniences, and for the reasons abouesayde, condempne and bannysh fyre and water, forsake theyr meate and drynke, suppress and forbyd all maner of weapons, abolysh and set asyde the holy Scripture, deny or vnregarde the blessed Sacrament? No, it were but madnesse once to thinke it. Therfore I say, the iudgment of that eye can neuer be egall and indifferent, whiche hath more respecte and regarde alwayes to the displeasures and hurtes possible to happen (only through the misuse of a thyng) then to the emolumentes and profites dayly and commonlye lyke to ensue to the well vsers of the same. That that of it selfe is good, is neuer to be disallowed for the sake of them that do abuse it. For as the Apostle also doeth testifie: To them that be good them selfe, euery thyng turneth to good, what euer it be, is to them a sufficient matter and occasion therein to seeke the glory of God, and the onely profyte of theyr euen Christen. And contrary, suche as be of an yll disposition, in euery thyng (be it neuer so good and salutarie) picketh out matter of maynteynaunce to theyr lewdnesse, turning matters of sadnesse and discretion, to foolyshe and ppyrthe pratyng contention.

wherfore

Whose iudgements can neuer be indifferent.

To the good euery thyng turneth to good.

The condition of such as be yll.

The Prologue.

Wherfoze considering that there is nothing in this worlde so necessary, ne so good, holy, or vertuous, but that it may by wyckednes be abused, it shalbe no great wonder though this little booke also, made, wrytten, and set forth for a good purpose, yet by lyght and lewde persons be vsed contrary to godlynes, honestie, or content of the wryter thereof. The abusion of this booke (in my simple iudgement) consisteth onely in these two poyntes. The one is, least that some wyckedly disposed person shoulde abuse suche medicines as he here declared for a good purpose, to some diuelishe and lewde vse. What I meane by the lewde vse of them, they that haue vnderstandyng, right soone will perceiue. The seconde poynt is, least that this booke hap- pening into any lyght marchauntes handes, shoulde minister matters vnto suche, to deuyse of these thynges at vnset and vnseemely tymes, to the derision or ashaming of suche women as shuld be in presence. &c. To these reasons can I make no better aunswere, then hath ben alled- ged before. Notwithstandyng, yet I say that I trust, yea, and do not doubt, but that this booke shall be so discretely deuyded abroad, that none of them shall fall in any suche persons hand- lyng. Agayne, yf any do chaunce to them, I am sure they wyll as soone reade this Prologue, as the rest of this booke, the which thing when they shall do, here shall they heare of me, that they be in theyr doynges, neyther honest, good, ne godly, but speakyng vnreuerently, contemp- tuously

Wherof
this booke
may be ab-
used.

The seconde
poynt.

No light per-
sons shall
haue any of
these booke.

The Prologue.

Of foolishhe
and lewde
talkers.

u. s. b. a.
Some wold
that neyther
honest ne
ob. i. a. h. vn honest
should haue
this booke.

w. s. p. a. s. t.

tuously and vntymely of suche thinges, they do
great iniury, dishonour, and contumely to na-
ture: For he that declareth any thyng in man
oz woman, priuie oz apart, talkyng and rehear-
sing it in reproche, derision, oz confusion of his
euen Christen, can not be excused of mortall
and deadly sinne, for so muche as contumeli-
ously he ashameth and confoundeth his euen
Christen, wherewith he bryngeth hym out of
paciencie, mouyng hym to yre, and vengeaunce,
in rehearsing of suche thinges, and after suche
sort, as he knoweth shoulde agreeue and bere
his mynde, wherfore for suche dedes, he shall
not be accounted of the number of honest and
sage persons, but of the light and lewde. Yet
another sort is there, whiche woulde that ney-
ther honest ne vn honest men shoulde see this
booke, for because (as they say) be a man neuer
so honest, yet by reading here of thinges to them
before vnknown, they shall conceyue a cer-
tayne lothsomnes and abhorring towards a
woman. To these I aunswere, that I knowe
nothyng in woman so priuie ne so secrete, that
they shoulde nede to care who knewe of it, ney-
ther is there any part in woman moze to be ab-
horred, then in man. And yf the knowledge of
suche thinges whiche commonly be called the
womans priuities, shoulde diminishe the har-
tie loue and estimation of a woman in the
minde of man, then by this reason, Physitians
and Chyrurgians wyues shoulde greatly be ab-
horred & misbeloued of their husbandes. And I
my

The Prologue.

my selfe lyke wyse, whiche wryteth this booke,
shoulde meruaylously aboue many other ab-
horre or lothe women. But to be short, there
is no such thing, neyther any cause therto why.

Wherfore all suche tender reasons set apart, let
no woman be greeued who shall see or beholde
this booke, for yf the partie be lewde, vnhappy
and knauishe that shall reade it, here I am sure
he shall learne neyther lewdenes, vnhappines,
ne knauery. Howbeit, generally to all men, in
whose handes this booke shal chaunce to come,
I counsaile and exhort, that they take not by-
pon them to talke of any thynges therein con-
tayned, but onlye where it may edifie, and be
assuredly well accepted.

For women lightly wyll not gladly heare of
suche matters, by any man, vnlesse it be a Phi-
sition of whom they require counsaile, or of
theyr discrete husbandes. It shall be no dis-
pleasure to any honest and louyng woman,
that her husbände shoulde reade suche thynges,
for many men there be of so gentle and louyng
nature towarde theyr wiues, that they wyll be
more diligent and carefull to reade or seeke
out any thyng that shoulde do theyr wyues
good, beyng in that case, then the women them-
selues. Briefly, I require all readers hereof, to
interpretate and consture euery thyng herein
contayned, accordyng to the best, and to vse
euery thyng herein entreated of, to the pur-
pose wherfore it was wrytten, for truely as
for

No matter
who reade
this booke.

Wherhorta-
tion to all
readers.

The Prologue.

The consideratiō why
this booke
was set forth

This booke
set forth in
many other
languages.

for my part considering the manyfolde, dayly,
and imminent daungers & perylles the whiche
all maner of women of what estate or degree so
euer they be, in theyr labours do sustayne and
abyde, yea, many times with peryll of their life
(of the which there be to many examples nede-
lesse here to be rehearsed) I thought it shoulde
be a very charitable and laudable dede, and
right thankefully to be accepted of all honou-
rable and other honest matrones, yf by my
paynes this little treatise were made to speake
Englyshe, as it hath ben long syth taught to
speake Dutche, frenche, Spanishe, and dyuers
other languages. In the whiche countreys
there be fewe women that can reade, but they
wyl haue one of these bookes alwayes in rea-
dines, where also this and other such bookes be
as commonly solde at euery Stacionars shop,
as any other booke. The same commoditie then
and profite whiche they in their regions do ob-
tayne by enioying of this little booke in theyr
maternall language, may also ensue vnto all
women in this noble Realme of Englande, it
beyng lykewyse sette forth in our Englyshe
speache, so that to them whiche diligently will
aduert, and geue heede to the instructions of
this little booke, it may supplie the roume and
place of a good midwyfe, and aduylse them ma-
nye tymes of sundry cases, chaunces, and reme-
dyes, wherein peraduenture ryght wyse wo-
men and good midwyues shalbe ful ignoraunt.

And

The Prologue.

And truely (as I haue ben credibly enfourmed by dyuers persons worthy to be beleued) there be sith the fyrst setting forth of this booke, right many honozable Ladyes, and other worshipful Gentyllwomen, whiche haue not disdayned, the oftener by the occasion of this booke, to frequent and haunt women in theyr laboures, carrying with them this booke in theyr handes, and causyng such part of it as doth chiefly concerne the same purpose, to be read before the Mydwyfe, and the rest of the women then being present, whereby oft tymes, then all haue ben put in remembraunce of that, wherewith the labouryng woman hath ben greatly comforted, and alleuiated of her thronges and traualle: whose laudable example and doynge, woulde God that many proude Mydwyues woulde ensue and folowe, among the whiche, as there be many ryght expert, diligent, wyse, circumspect, and tender about suche busines as appertayneth to theyr office: So be there agayne many mo full vndiscrete, vnreasonable, cholish, and farre to seeke in such thinges, the whiche shoulde chiefly helpe and succour the women in theyr moste paynefull labour and thronges, through whole rudenesse and rashnesse onlye, I doubt not but that a great number of women in theyr labour spede worse then neded otherwyse. But here nowe let not the good Mydwyues be offended with that, that is spoken of the badde. For verily there is no science, but that it hath his Apes, Owles, Veres,

Howe Ladies & gentylwomen haue bled this booke.

Of Midwyues.

of all sortes.

The Prologue.

Some Mid-
wives wold
haue had
this booke
forbidden.

The false
surmises of
the maleuo-
lent.

The good
Midwives
were glad of
this booke.

and Altes, whiche as aboue all other haue most
nede of information and teaching, so most com-
monly agayne, more then any other, wyl they
kicke and wyntce agaynst suche as woulde them
refourme or reduce to any better way then they
haue ben accustomed to in times past. And this
do I say, for because that at the first commyng
abrode of this present booke, many of this sort
of Midwyues, moued eyther of enuie, or els of
mallice, or both, diligented and endeuoured
them very earnestly, by all wayes possible, to
fynde the meanes to suppressse and abrogate the
same, makyng all women of theyr acquaint-
taunce (whom they thought to haue any know-
ledge thereof) to beleue that it was nothyng
worth, and that it shoulde be a flander to wo-
men, for so muche as therein was descried and
set forth the secretes and priuities of women,
and that euery boy and knaue hadde of these
bookes, readyng them as openly as the tales of
Robin hood. &c. The whiche sayinges, as they
were false and vnttrue, and malicious allegati-
ons onely of euill harted persons, to whom it
was great grieffe, that any by readyng thereof,
shoulde see or vnderstande more then they had
knowledge of before: So is it very sooth and
true, that ryght dyuers of the better and more
sober sort, were thereof full fayne and glad, and
berye desirous to haue of them, and gaue
faythfull counsell also vnto women of theyr
familier knowledge, to heare the booke read by
some other, or els (suche as coulde) to reade it
them

The Prologue.

them selues, whose honest and vertuous industry in that behalfe, as it doth merite and deserue the laude and prayse of all them that be laudable them selfe: enen so is the fylthy and vile ingratitude and despitious enuye of the maleuolent, to be detested and vtterly abhorred of all people: whose malignaunt wittes, yf they might preuaile of theyr purpose, woulde they the good courages of all honest enterprisers, in those matters and all other. And

thus I conclude and make an ende
of this rude Prologue, requi-

ring the gentle readers

thereof, that if they

shall fynde any

thing ther-

in inter-

pretable to diuers senses, to ac-

cept only that whiche may

make to the best, accor-

dyng to my mea-

nyng.

Enuy and
vnthankful-
nes to be ab-
horred.

The first booke.

In this first Chapter is briefly declared the Contentes of the first booke.



Although that many thinges entreated of in this first booke, shall seeme vnto some not very necessary to the vnderstandyng of the seconde booke, yet then contrary do I ensure and certifie (as I haue sufficiently said in the Prologue) that the ignorant in the first, shall be full blynde in the seconde, to the whiche, the first is as a key, opening and clearing the matters to be intreated of in the seconde.

The vtilitie of the first booke.

The Contentes of this booke.

In this first booke then shall be declared the fourme, maner, and situation of the inwarde partes of a woman, such as are in them, by nature dedicate and assigned to the propagation, conception, and bearing of mankynde. In whō truely is the receptacle, & as ye woulde say, the campe or fielde of mankynde to be engendred therein. And although that
that

The number of the first

that man be as principall mouer and cause of the generation: yet (no displeasure to men) the woman doth conferre and contribute muche more, what to the encrease of the chylde in her wombe, and what to the nourishment thereof after the byrth, then doth the man. And doubtlesse, yf a man woulde demaunde to whom the chylde oweth most his generation: Ye may worthily make aunswere, that to the mother, whether ye regarde the paynes in bearyng, other els the conferrence of mooste matter in begettyng.

Furthermore, in this booke ye shall reade certaine thinges, which in times passed haue ben corruptly, negligently, yea and very falsely wrytten of, and of the whiche both men, yea and women them selues, haue conceiued very erroneous and misopinions, as ye shall farther perceyue in the processe.

Nowe therefore that we come to the declaration of the Organs generatiue in woman, it shalbe necessary to the bet

The woman conferreth more the generatiō then man.

Many things falsly wrytten in times past

The first Booke.

better vnderstandyng thereof, fyrst to
shewe the discription of certayne thyn-
ges, without whose knowledge, this
treatyse woulde be manye tymes the
more obscure and darke.

In howe many coates the body is lapped or
inuolued. Cap. ii.

The princ-
pall coates of
the body.



The body of man or
womā is inuolued
or compassed vni-
uersally with three
principall coates.

Of the whiche, the
first and vttermost
is called the skyn,
in Latin *Cutis*, with

whom generally every part of the body
is clad & inclosed, the which yet in some
part is more soft, delicate, & thin, then in
some other, & in some one person more
stowre & stiffe, then in some other again,
for causes needlesse here to be rehearsed.

And ye shall note, that vpon the out-
ward face and superficie of this skinne,
there is yet another thinner skinne, in

Latine

The superfi-
ciall skynne.

Cutis

Latine commonly named *Cuticula*, and of some *Efflorescentia cutis*. This thinne skin is it, the which ye see ryse like a bladder when any part of the body is blistered with fyre or hot water, so that betwene this thinne skin and the very skinne, is conteined the water which resorteth to the place by the violence of the fyre or heat, the which thin skin also we vse to pricke to let the water issue forth, also the same that skaleth or pylleth of the handes or other parts of the body being scabbed & begynnyng to drye. Item the skin that the Adders do cast in the sommer tyme, is the foresaid thin superficiall skin, & not the very substanciall skin of the body in dede. For the very skinne neuer pylleth ne falleth of but by great violence, as by flaying, lyke as beastes be flayne at the butchers, & as they flay conies. And againe, the thin or superficial skin, skale it or fal it of neuer so oftē, yet in the place of it is reingendred new, as good alwayes as the former. But yf the second & very skinne be perished, by

Cuticula.

The adder or
 snake casteth
 his Cuticula
 not his true skin

The herpe
 skyn skaleth
 not of.

The first Booke.

The verye
skin perished,
neuer restored

cuttyng or apostumation, or by other casualtie, it wyl neuer be restored to his olde perfection agayne, but shall shewe alwayes in the place where it is, as it were a seame, skarre, or marke, smothe and harder then the other skynne, and without naturall powers.

The seconde
coate.

membrana car-
sa. The fleshy
skynne.

composita

The seconde investiture or clothynge of the body, is named the fleshye skin, in Latin *Membrana carnosā*, so called, for because that it conteineth and is composed of fleshyes, then any other kelle or skin in all the bodie, & is, as it were, the lynnyng to the foresayde *Cutis*, that is the very skyn immediatly aboue hym, the very skin and it being both basted together, by a great numbze of small fibres or cordes enterlasyng these two skinnes so that with great payne vnneth may they be seperated the one frō the other. And farther, betwene these two skins runne a great number of baynes, arteries and skinnes, in euery part of the body, so that the great baynes which appeare so manifestly to your syght in
the

the armes, temples, handes, legges, fecte, and other places, runne betwene the proper skinne and the fleshy skynne, this beyng to them as a bedde, and that as a couerlet.

The thirde coate of the body, is the fatte, in Latine *Adeps*, the which doeth so generally in euery part of the bodye inuolue and wrappe the same, as the other two coates: but yet the man or woman beyng in any reasonable lyking, it is founde in euery part (except fewe) as the forehead, the temples, the backes of the handes and feete, with certayne other places nedeleffe here to be resited, and doth entercurre and run betwene the two foresayde skynnes, receiuyng & embzasyng in it selfe the small bastynge fibres, the vayne, artires, and sinues, which (as I saide before) be deriued from the one skin to the other: And the greater foyson of fat that there is betwene the two skinnes, the lesse be the vaynes intercurryng betwene them, conspicuous or sensible to the eye (thabundance
of

The thyrde
coate, is the
fatte. *Adeps*

Stoze of fat
letteth the
shewe of the
vaynes.

The first Booke.

Fat in some
part, more
then some.

of fat drawnyng & coueryng the great-
nes of them) the which also in the selfe
same place of a leaner or sparer person,
shalbe sene very great, and as it were
swollen baynes, in comparison of the
fatter. Itē, vnderstande ye that in some
part of the body, naturally fatnes doth
abound much more then in other some,
as in the belly lyghtly the fatte is two
fingers thicke & more, and in women
that be meanelly fat, in the thyes & buc-
tockes this fatte is of thre, yea foure
fyngers thiknes, which (as I sayde a-
boue) alwayes hath his place betwene
the foresayde two skynnes.

What is con-
teyned nexte
vnder the
fleshy skynne

Nowe immediatly vnder the fleshye
skin, be conteyned the Muskles of the
body, so that the inner face or superficie
of the fleshy skin, wherwith it toucheth
the Muskles, is alwayes bedewed with
a certayne slympe moysture, by whiche
meanes, the foresaid Muskles mouyng
and styrpyng vnder the said fleshy skin,
be the freer, & haue the lesse impediment
or let in theyr motion, & very easy it is

to seperate this skin from the Muskles.

Here is declared what the Muskles be.

Cap. iiii.

The Muskles of mans body be called the mouyng cordes and fleshye strynges, whereby any member of the body is moued to or fro vpwarde or downwarde, or turned rounde. As for example. If ye close, or otherwyle do moue either of your handes, and in closyng or mouyng it, with the other hande do feele the wreste of that hande, ye shall sensiblie perceyue as it were certayne cordes mouyng vnder the skynne, the whiche be called Muskles, in Latin *Musculi*. To discusse curiously the nature or occasion of the name of Muskles, is not for this place. Here it is sufficient to vnderstand what is meant by the name. Yet note ye well, that wheresouer there is greate store of Muskles, and chiefely in the myddle parte of them, there is also greate plentie of fleshe, enterlaryng

What is meant by the name of Muskles.

little myse.

The first Booke.

The muskles
entermingled
with fleshe.

lardynge & entermynnglyng it selfe with
the Muskles, & as it were conbyndyng,
colligatyng, or knyttyng together the
Muskles, not so yet, but that neuerthe-
lesse they haue theyr free motion.

All other places of the body leftte a-
part and vnmentioned of, here wyll I
onlye declare a litle of the Muskles of
the belly, forsomuch as their operation
is sometymes conferent and appertey-
nyng to the matters that we entend of.

The muskles
of the belly.

Ouer the amplitude of the bellye,
next vnder the fleshy kell or skyn, be. iiii.
Muskles, eche situate and sette vnder o-
ther, of the whiche, the vppermost im-
mediatly touchyng the fleshye skyn be
called the Biaswyle descendyng Mus-
kles, in Latin *Musculi obliqui descendentes*. Of
these Muskles there be two, in ech syde
of the belly one, so that these two Bias-
wyle descendyng Muskles meete toge-
ther in the myddle region of the bellye,
and be extended or spread ouer all the
amplitude of the belly, shapyng thereto
as it were another coate.

*Musculi obliqui
descendentes
part 2*

The

The seconde Muskles be named the byaswyle ascending Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi obliqui ascendentes*, whose being is immediatly next vnder the inner face of the first Muskles. Of these also as of the first, in eche syde or coaste of the belly is there one.

Musculi obliqui ascendentes
part. 1.

The thirde sort of the belly Muskles as they be situate in order, the one vnder the other, be called the ryght Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi recti*, which be double as the other two before.

The right Muskles.

Musculi recti
part. 2.

The fourth be nominated the ouerthwart Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi transuersi*, because they transuerse or ouerthwart the belly. In eche side likewise of whom, there is one of these Muskles, which in the middle line of the belly encountre eche other, as I haue sayde of the abouenamed three Muskles, so that the byaswyle descendyng, and the byaswyle ascending with the ouerthwart Muskles, do eche of them couer and compasse all the whole breadth of the belly, but so do not the right Muskles,

The ouerthwart Muskles.

Musculi transuersi
part. 2.

The first booke.

The vse of
the foure
belly Mus-
cles.

kles, for the breadth of them is but small in comparison of the other. All these foure Muscles be to the entrayles and bowels within the belly, as foure seuerall coates, by the vertue and helpe of whom, together with the ayde of the midriffe, all expulsion both vppward and downewarde in the guttes, in the stomacke, in the matrix of the woman in the tyme of labour, and also in the bladder in tyme of makyng of water, is wrought, and yet besydes this vtilitie, they clothe (as I haue sayde) defende, fortifie, and strength the inwardes of the belly.

¶ Of the Kell, called *Peritoneum*.

Capit. iiii.



The Perito-
neum and
his office.

Vnder the laste Muskle of the belly, called the ouerthwarte Muskle, immediatlye succeedeth a certaine thin rime, kell, or skin, named in Latin, *Peritoneum*, whiche compasseth rounde the amplitude
and

and largeour of the belly, takyng his originall at the bynders of the loyne bones, and from thence dilatyng and spreadyng it selfe abroade, vnderlineth the ouerthwart Muskels, the midriffe, & part of the short ribbes. To be short, this rime vnderlineth all the whole cavitie, holones, or amplitude of the belly, from the midriffe to the flankes or share, immediatly contaynyng and inuoluing in it selfe, all the whole contentes of the belly, euen as the skin next vnder the shell of an egge enuironeth and compasseth immediatly all the contayned meate of the egge. And as for *Peritoneum*, doth not onely inuolue all the entrayles of the belly in his compasse, but also yeldeth vnto eche entrayle a coate and webbe of the cloth of his owne bodie, by the which his liuery, they be the more arctly & straightly affixed or fastened vnto himselfe, and farther, in themselves the stronger, within the cavitie of the belly, and vnder this *Peritoneum*, be contayned these bowels followyng.

The vse and profit of the *Peritoneum*

First

The first booke.

Bowels con-
tained un-
der the Peri-
toneum.

Stomachus
omnium.
Sapar.
Splen.
Vesica.
matris.
intestina
Vena
Vena Cava
Arteria magna.

First the stomake, whiche is the first receptacle and receauer of the foode or meate chawed and mashed before in the mouth, from thence descendyng ouer the winde pipe, downe along the stomacke gut, and so consequently into the stomacke, then the Kell, in Latin, Omentum, the liuer, the splene or melt, the bladder, and the matrix, then yet the guttes, vnder the guttes, the kydnees, the master vayne, and the master arteire. But here we shall begin first to en- treat of the matrix, as the part which maketh chiefly to our purpose.

The declaration of the names and nature of the Matrix.

Capit. v.

Dyuers names of the Matrix.

Matrix
matris
wombs in
libro
Synonyma.

Here ye shall vnderstande, that these thre wordes, the Matrix, the Mother, and the Wombe, do signifie but one thing, that is to say: The place wherein the seede of man is conceiued, fetified, conserued, nourished, & augmented, vnto the tyme of

of deliuerance, in Latin, named *Vterus* & *Matrix*. The necke of this wombe, or therwise called the womans priuie, we wyl call the wombe passage, or the priuie passage, in Latin *Cervex vteri*, & *pu- dendum muliebre*, the extreme end, or the first entraunce of this priuie or wombe passage, ye shall name the passage port, for because that it is the port gate, or entraunce of that passage, or way into the wombe or matrix, in Latin, *Vulua. i. vulua.*

*utrum of
matrix sunt
idem ut vnum*

*utrum vteri ut
pudendum muli-
eris sunt idem*

*et passage port
id est vulua*

The wombe passage then or the necke of the wombe, taketh his beginning at the passage port, and from thence styeth and mounteth ryght vpwarde vnder the sharebone like a great conduct, varyng in length & bredth accordyng to the age of the woman.

The necke
of the Ma-
trix.
*cervix vteri
ant matrix*

To make especiall mention of the length of this wombe passage, were but follie, for the diuersitie thereof. Notwithstanding in women it is esteemed of the length of .x. .xi. .xii. or .xiii. fingers bredth, some more, some lesse. And this we may say that nature hath so prouid-

*longitudo cervi-
cis vteri*

The first booke.

ded that it is of sufficient length, to receyue the priuie part of man, in the generation, directing the same towardes the Wombe port, thoro we the whiche the seede is naturally sent from the man into the wombe or Bother, therto helping an attractife power, whiche is inset and geuen to the wombe, to attract and drawe towardes it selfe the seede parted from the man (so that there be no other let.)

¶ Of the wombe and his partes.

Capit. vi.



The wombe
oz Matric in
women not
with chylde
contracted.

At the head oz vpper end of this wombe passage, is situate the wombe it selfe, whiche in women beyng not with childe is very little, contract and drawen together, so that the amplitude oz largenes therof, passeth not the amplitude & largenes of the priuie passage, the whiche thing to some may seeme vncredible, yet by Anothomie ye maye see it to be true.

And

And for al this contraction or drawing
 so nere together of the Matrix, the out-
 syde of it is very smothe, moyst, gliste-
 ryng, and reddishe, as it were a lyttle
 redde tempered with a great deale of
 whyte, the insyde also of the Matrix is
 smothe: yea, and though that the Ma-
 trix (as we haue said) be full of riuels or
 wrinkles, by the reason that it is so con-
 tract, from a great amplitude or large-
 nes (as may be seene in the wombe or
 Matrix of women with chylde) to this
 little compasse, yet may a body scarce
 perceyue in this inner side any wrinkle,
 (albeit that there be infinite) they be so
 finely and nere drawen together.

This contraction of the Matrix, no
 doubt was made by nature, for these
 causes, partly that at suche tyme that
 the woman is not with childe, it should
 occupie the lesse rowme in the belly, but
 chiefly that in tyme of conception of
 the seede, the little bolke or quantitie
 of the sayde seede, at his first concey-
 uing into the womans Mother, may

The cause of
 the contrac-
 tion of the
 Matrix.

The first booke.

be touched rounde about euery Where of the Mother, and as ye woulde say, amplexed or embrased, and contayned (as the nut shell contayneth immediatlye the nut) of the inner Walles or face of the matrix, and as the seede is viuified, shaped, and doth encrease, so doth the amplitude of the matrix enlarge and waxe bygger, so that at the laste, when the infant commeth to his full groweth, or when the woman is great with chylde, then this coate or kelle of the Matrix is as thinne as a bladder, where that in tyme of his contraction, or when the woman is not with childe, the coate or wall of the Matrix is as good as halfe an inche thicke.

Howe the
Matrix varieth
the thicke-
nes and thin-
nes of his
coate.

The founde
of the Ma-
trix.

Howe ye shall vnderstande, that the founde or bottome of the matrix is not perfectly rounde bowllwysse, but rather lyke the forme of a mans hart, as it is paynted, sayng that the partition or clifte in the matrix betwene both corners, the ryght and the lefte, is not so profoundly dented inwarde as the
clift

elyfte in the hart: For in the inwarde vault, cavitie, or holonesse of the Matrix, there is a certayne seame, whiche begynnynge in the myddle of the forepart of the Matrix at the wombe port, doth passe forth by that foresyde, & so by the bottome to the hynder syde of the Matrix, & from thence along downe to the wombe port on the backsyde, as ye may more euidentlye see in the figure hereof. This seame then is as it were a litle seperation, marke, or limitie, deuidyng the wombe in two equall partes or sydes, the ryght and the lefte. Notwithstanding, in the Matrix there is but one vault, cavitie, holonesse, or amplitude, the foresayde seame beyng but as it were a note, signe, or scace sensible marke running along the sides and botome of the wombe. But this seame or line where it passeth the bottome of the mother or wombe, is more crasse, thicke, and fleshye, propendyng, heldyng, hangyng or lokyng downeward into the vaulte or amplitude of the

A certayne seame deuidyng the Matrix as it were in two partes.

In the Matrix but one holonesse.

Certayne erroneous opinions of. vii. selles in the wombe.

wombe, the whiche line in the sides is nothyng so manifeste ne sensible to be perceyued. Thus ye may see, that the myddle part of the bottome of the Matrix, is not so hye as the two corners or angles on both sydes be. Other distinctions or seperations in the Matrix is there none, albeit that in tymes passed, diuers Clerkes haue written, and many other haue beleued, that there shoulde be seuen selles, or seuen distinct places in the Matrix, in thre of the which, on the ryght syde, shoulde onlye men chyldren be conceyued, and in the other thre on the left syde women chyldren, and yf it chaunced that the seede were conceiued in the seuenth sell, which was the middelmoste, then that shoulde become a monster, halfe a man & halfe a woman. The which al is but lyes, dreames, and fonde fantasies. For the womans Matrix, as I haue sayde, is euen as a strong bladder, hauing in it but one vniuersal holonesse, and the chyld when it lyeth in it, lyeth euer on the one syde more then

then on the other, the head beyng to-
wardes one of the corners or angles, &
not vpright toward the middle bridge.

The Matrix
hath but one
holonelle.

¶ Of the Mother port.

Cap. vi.



The entrance of
the Matrix or
Wombe, is na-
med the Wōbe
port, or mother
port, the which
in substaunce,
& fassion, much
doeth resemble
the fourme of

Of the Mo-
ther port, and
the situation
therof.

an haukes bell, or other litle mores bel-
les, sauyng that it is much bygger, ha-
uyng a clift ouerthwart the body ther-
of, as ye may more playnly perceyue by
the figure hereof. And this port of the
Matrix is of substaunce more thicke &
crasse then the rest of the same, & as it
were a kernell rounde & clift in the mid-
dest. This Wombe port also is fastned &
afixed to the vpper ende of the Wombe
passage, as all the rest of the Wombe is.

Howe be it, the myddle parte of the wombe port or the snout therof, where it bosseth downewarde, doth touche no side nor part of the wombe passage, but onely heldeth pendande wyse, or loketh downewarde, and where as at suche tyme that the man companieth with the woman, the priuie passage is dilated & opened to the quantitie of mans priuie part, yet notwithstanding, the mouth of the clift of the wombe port is not moued thereby ne dilated, excepte that it be at such tyme that the matrix beyng apte and disposed thereto, and other conditions requisite, this wombe port do naturallye open it selfe, attractyng, drawyng, and suckyng into the wombe the seede, by a vehement and naturall desyre.

The wombe well disposed naturally attracteth the seede.

Notwithstanding, when the seede is conceiued in at this wombe port it doth not alwayes remayne there, but many tymes issueth out agayne for some indisposition founde other in the place or in the seede it self. Albeit yf the seede be
retayn

retayned styll in the Matrix, then doth the wombe port close it selfe so fast and so firmly, that the poynt of a nedle can not enter in thereat without violence, and so doth remayne vntyll the time of deliuerance, at what tyme agayne it delateth and openeth it self, in such amplitude and largenesse, that it is wonderfull to speake of.

The closenes
of the Matrix
after the seed
conceaued.

C Of the vessels of seede, called the stones, with other thereto appertayning.

Cap. viii.



Of eche syde of the Matrix lieth a stone, which both be called the womans stones, wherein is engendred the seede and sparme that cometh from the woman, not so stronge, firme, and mightie in operation as the seede of man, but rather weake, fluy, colde, and moyste, and of no great firmitie: howbeit, as conuenient and proper for the purpose for the whiche it was ordeyned, as the seede of man for his

The first Booke.

his purpose. These stones be nothing so bygge as the stones of man, but lesse, flatter, much fassyoned after the shape of a great and brode almonde. The substance and body of these stones is not made massyfe, or compact and softe as mens stones be, but as it were many litle kirkelles sette together, betwene the which is much holonesse, and therein conteyned a certayne thinne watery substance. This substance of the stones is inuolued & wrapped with a coate or thinne skinne, very firmly annexed to the foresayde substance, which also doth receyue into hym selfe the seede bryngers. We may name the same coate in Latin *Supergeminalis*.

Of the seede bryngers. Cap. ix.

Of the seede bryngers.



The seede bryngers, called in Latin *Vasa semen adferentia*, be two baynes & two artires, whiche come to these two stones, to eche one bayne and one artire, and take theyr begynnynng

uyng on this wyse.

Under the guttes (as ye may see in the figures hereof) be situate the great maister vayne, in Latin *Cava vena*, and the great Artire, *Arteria magna*. The maister vayne hath his originall of the liver, from whence it descendeth downward along the loynes, vntyll it attayne vnto the begynnyng of *Os sacrum*, where the Artire (as the Worthyer) begynneth to mount vppon the maister vayne, and in this place they both deuide them selues in two partes forke wyse, the ryght part of the forke proceeding into the ryght thygh & legge, the lefte, into the left legge, the vayne euermore associate with the artire, the which hath his begynning of the hart, from whence he is descended thorowe the mydryffe to this place, distributing to all places whereby he passeth artires.

The office of the great vayne is, to conduct and cary from the liuer (which is the bloud shoppe, where the bloud is engendred

The original
of the great
vayne.

The office of
the vaines.

The first Booke.

engendred) to all partes of the bodye
bloud, therewith to nozyshe them. For
to the great vayne where they passe,
there commeth innumerable smal vai-
nes on euery syde, euen as to the great
ryuers many small streames on euery
syde do resort.

The office of
the Artires.

The office of the artires is, to spreade
abrode in the body the vitall and lyue-
lye spirite, engendred in the bosome of
the harte, and to refreshe and temper
the immoderate heate whiche other-
wyle mought be engendred in the bo-
dye, the whiche also sleepe we or wake
we, do continuallye moue and beate,
therefore the motion of them is called
the pulce, and loke after what maner
the hart (whiche is the well of these ar-
tires) doeth moue or stirre it selfe, and
euen so do they.

The hart &
Artires haue
two contrary
motions.

The hart then, and the artires tho-
row him, haue two contrary motions:
one is, in closyng it selfe, and the other,
in dilatyng and openyng of it selfe,
whiche sorte of mouynges we call the
beatyng

beating of the pulces, When the artires do open them selues, then they attract, drawe, or sucke in fresh ayre, to temper the heate of the body Withall, and also spirituall and thin pure bloud. But when they close them selfe, then do they expel mistie fumes, and hoate breathes, or vnnaturall vapoures, suche as of necessitie alwayes be engendred in al partes of the body, by the whiche bloud doth passe, for causes to long here to be alledged, neyther is there any notable vayne vnassociate of an artyre.

Nowe on the right side and forepart of the great vaine proceadeth a braūch, deriued from that place a longe the loynes downwardes to the head of the ryght stone, from the ryght syde lyke wyle and foreface of the great artyre, descendeth a braunche thwarting ouer the great vayne downe towardes the right loynes, wher it meeting with the foresayde vayne braunche, before they emplant them selfe in the head of the stone, become both as one bodye, here straight

The meeting
of the vayne
and artire,

The first booke.

straight enlarging them selfe, little and little stepelwylse, not fully rounde, but flattishe before and behynde, with the broder ende plantyng & infixing them selfe into the head of the ryght stone.

And at the vpper and smaller ende, where this vayne braunche and artyre braunche do first meete, they beginne to entermingle, embrayde, and enterlade eche other in suche infinite wylse, wrything and deuydyng them selues in thousande of lyttle braunches, as it were hayres of the head, the one embracing, compassyng, and ouerthwarting the other so confusedly, that no wit can expresse the ryght maner and order of theyr commixtion. Call this part then in Enlyshe, the bradid body, in Latin *Varicoso formemplexum*, whose nether and broder ende, as I sayde before, affixed and implanted in the vpper head of the ryght stone, sendeth forth braunches and armes into the bodye of the same stone, manyfolde wylse disperled, spred, and commixt.

The bradid
body.

And

And also into the skin or couer of the stone, called before *Supergeminalis*, from the sayd bradyd body, be there deriued manye small braunches, muche lyke vnto the little small vaynes Whiche ye see reddishe in a mans eye.

And looke what description and pro-
cesse, We haue made of the ryght side
seede byngers, to the ryght stone, euen
the same vnderstand of the left side seede
byngers to the left stone, sauyng that
the vayne braunche Whiche commeth
to the left stone, most commonly taketh
his originall of the uether syde of the
left kydney vayne, and not immediatly
of the great vayne as the other.

And ye shall vnderstande againe, that
from the foresaid vayne & artyre of eche
side, at the place where theyr fyrst con-
iunction or meeting is, procedeth a cer-
tayne braunche of the vayne, assoiate
with the artyre, which both passe forth
together to the found or bottome of the
Mother or Matrix, of that syde where
they stande, there delatynge and sprea-
dyng

Vaynes de-
riued to the
bottome of
the Matrix.

The first booke.

dyng them selfe abroade in manyfolde
smaller braunches, to the nourishment
of the body of the matrix.

¶ Of the office and vse of these seede
bringers. Capit. x.

The seede
procreate of
the vayne
bloud and
the artiriall
bloud.

Through these seede bringers,
bloud out of the vaynes, and
liuely spirit out of the artires
be deriued, yea, or rather (to
speake more properly) attract or dra-
wen into the stones, there by vertue and
naturall instinction of the place altered
and chaunged, beyng fyrst confused to-
gether the bloud and the spirite, by mu-
tuall amplexations or embracements
of these two vesselles, the vayne and
the artyre beyng conioyned and vnite
in one very body, fyrst beginning in the
bradid body, & then after in the whole
bode of the stone: So that thoro we
the manyfolde and infinite circulati-
ons of the attracted matter by the con-
duictes or vaynes infinitely intricate
and

and Wrythed With a thousande reuolu-
tions or turagaynes (and all in the lit-
tle compasse of the body of the stones)
the bloud and spirite commixed toge-
ther, getteth another nature and pro-
pertie both in colour and in effect.

And here ye shall vnderstande, that
moſte commonly alwayes when that
nature is diſpoſed to make a tranſmu-
tation of any matter, that can ſhe not
do, vnleſſe ſhe haue a mine, ſhoppe, or
wozkehouſe, wherein by continuall cir-
culatiō of the matter tranſmutable, ſhe
may bring her purpoſe to paſſe. Euen
as mettalles and other minerals of the
earth, haue their ſcrete and vniſible
baynes, in whiche by dayly and long
coagitation, mouing, circulation, and
hurling together, thei be brought from
one forme to another, & made metals
of that the which before was none.

Of theſe ſort of mines, there be foure
principall in the body of man.

The firſt is the mine of bloud, which is
the lyuer, in whom the iuyce of meate,

¶ I

before

Note the in-
gin and poli-
cie of nature

Foure
mines in
mans body.

The first booke

before of colour whyte, is transmited into red, made apt and fitte to nourishe all partes of the body, attract and drawen out of the stomacke and guttes, thoroowe very small and infinite lyttle vaynes into the lyuer.

The hart is
the seconde
mine.

The seconde mine is the hart, which of the bloud attract and drawen from the great master vayne, procedyng out of the foresayde lyuer, into his parlors, doth engender vehement and liuely spirite, comixed with depured and greatly elaborated bloud, within the selles of the hart, from thence sent forth thoroow the artires, into all partes of the bodye, beyng in colour yealowishe, thinne and hotte bloud.

The brayne
the thirde
mine.

The thyrde mine is the brayne, of whom all the sinewes take theyr originall. In whom the Wittie spirite, the spirites of mouyng, and the spirites of al sensibilitie be engendred, and thoroow the sinewes sent to all partes of the bodye. For all suche partes as moue and feele, haue that by reason of sinewes deriued

riued vnto those places from the head.

The fourth mine is the stones, in whō by conuixtion of al the other thre foze-
said metalles of the body, that is to say,
vayne bloud, arteriall bloud, and liuely
spirites engendred in the head, is engen-
dred & produced seede, whiche bestowed
in his due place, becommeth like a per-
fection to the creature from whence it
came, that is to say, of mankinde, man.

But ye shall vnderstande, that the re-
ceyving of the seede into the stones, is
not that there shoulde be any one onlye
caue, holownesse, sell, vaulte, or parler
in the bodye of the stone, wherein it
myght be receyued and retayned, lyke
as the holownesse of an egge, the meate
beyng out of it, or of an hasell nutte, the
kernell out of it, but farre otherwyle:
for the stones (chiefly in man more then
in woman) be massife, not hard, but di-
licate and softe, as a softe kernell, full of
small & almost vn sensible white vaines,
reuoluing them selfe in and out a thou-
sand folde, and manyfolde wise intricat

The fourth
mine is the
stones.

Howe the
seede is re-
ceyued into
the stones.

together, within the which the seede is conueyed, carped, concocted, or digested and altred, by vertue of the whyte flesh, which intercurrenth and intermingleth it selfe euery where betwene the foresaid bayne, lyke as the earth doth intercurrenth and intermingle it selfe betwene and among the small fibres, beades, or heares of rootes. The whyte coate also or walles of the said baynes, helping not a little to the transmutation of the colour from red to whyte.

Howe the colour of the seede is transmuted.

Liquid things saoureth of the nature of the vessels thowhe which it runneth.

For euery thing that is liquid, as the seede is, receyueth alwayes a nature of the place, mine, or conduite, by which it runneth and passeth, so that when the conduite is very small and narrowe, and long withal, then the liquour that passeth through it, receyueth and saoureth so muche the more the nature and condition of that vessell or conduite. As for an example: If there were a conduit or pipe made of lead, whose length were ten foote, and the inner compasse, holonesse, or cavitie of the same, but so much that

that an heere myght passe thoroowe it: then say I, that a gallō or quart of water passing and thyrilling through that narrow conduite, should sauour muche more of the nature and qualitie of lead, then though the holownesse of the aforesayde conduite, beyng styll of the abouenamed length, were so large that a bowle myght enter and passe thoroow the same. For this reason, that when the water hath to passe thoroowe so narrow passage, it maketh the longer iurney, and yeldeth the smaller threade or streen, and therfore is touched more immediatly and intierly of the insydes or inner walles of the conduite. And further, well ye wote that a little quantitie is sooner ouercome & altered, then a great. As a sponefull of wine standyng all nyght in a pewter or brasen pot, shal sauour much more of the potte, then a pynte of the same. Lyke wise, yf a man woulde coole hoat drynke by pouryng of it out of one pot or cup into another, sooner and more perfectlye shall the cir-

A little quantitie sooner overcome then a greater.

The first Booke.

The pollicie
of nature.

cumstant colde ayre alter and coole it, beyng poured out very softly, makyng therof a fine and small streen, then yf he dyd the same hastily. And truely this engine and pollicie doth nature vse in euery part where she causeth any notable transmutation, making the matter transmutable to passe thoroowe longe strayghtes & narrowe turagayne lanes, the matter bowyng, enclynyng, and apting it selfe alwayes to the dispositi^on and nature of the vesselles, thoroowe which it cooleth or runneth, so that the sparne or seede of man or woman, being attracted by the foresaid seede bringers into the stones, passeth by many narrow strayghtes, which beyng before vayne bloud and artire bloud, by vertue of the places through whiche it had to passe, becommeth from red colour to whyte, & of much more perfection then it was before. For this transmutation of bloud into sparne, is not only in colours, but also in properties and absolute perfecti^on. What greater wonder or miracle is there,

The trans-
mutation of
bloude into
sparne.

there, wherin We may knowledge and beholde the omnipotencie of God, then to consider howe that of the meate and dzyrke whiche We dayly do eate, by digestiō first of the stomacke, the fine iuyce thereof is seperated from the drosse and grosser part, & then after at the seconde hande, the foresayde iuyce passyng thoro the guttes, attract and drawen into the lyuer thoro the infinite smal baynes, there transmuted into bloud, from the lyuer sent into the great maister bayne, from the whiche the hart drawyng part, transmutedeth certayne therof into Artire bloud. Agayne, the stones drawyng other part, maketh thereof & of the artire bloud, whorled, circulate, and coagitate together, sparne: Which sparne bestowed and conceaued where it shoulde be, becommeth mankynde.

This foresayde seede, as we saide before, is nothing so firme, perfect, absolute and mightie in woman as in man, & yet can you not cal this any imperfection or lack in womā, for the womā in her

Whole meate
and dzyrke is
transmuted
into bloud.

The seede in
woman, not
so firme as in
man.

The first Booke.

kinde, and for the office & purpose wherfore she was made, is euen as absolute and perfect as man in his kynd, neither is woman to be called (as some do) vnperfecter then man (for because that man is more myghtyer and strong, the woman weaker & more feeble.) For by this reason, the horse, the Lion, the D. liphant, Camell, & many other beastes, should be called more perfect then man, to the whiche man is not able to compare in naturall myght and strength.

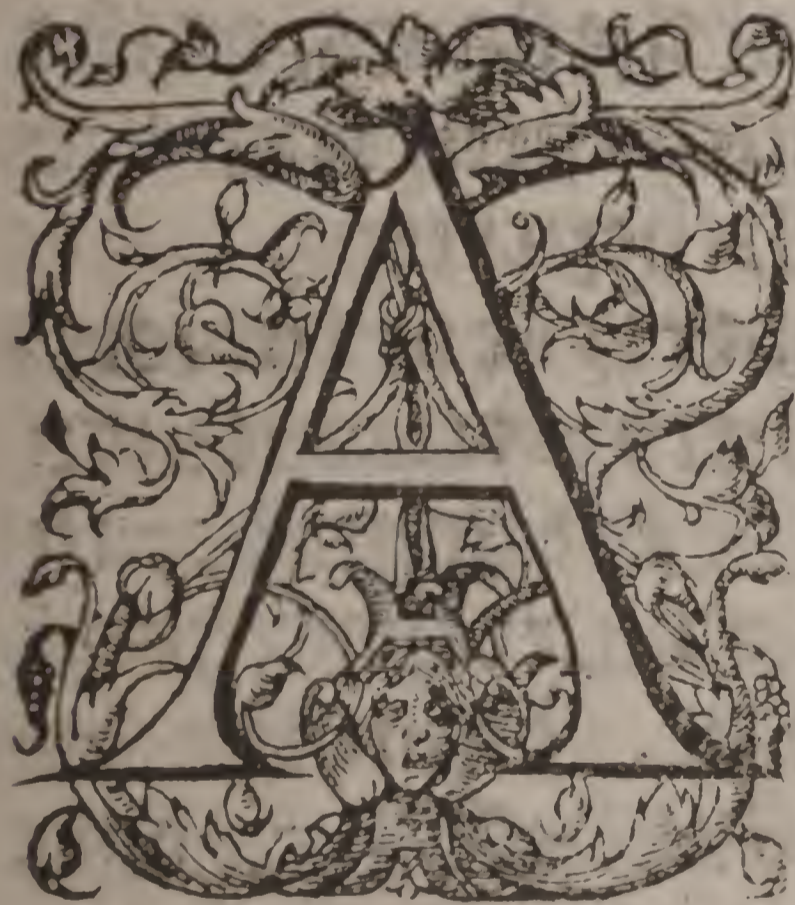
Who be vnperfecter the one then the other.

But truely, compar yng one man to another, suche as be gelded and want the genitories, be much feebler, weake, & effeminate, then other, in voyce womālyke, in gesture and condition nice, in softnes of skin and plumpnes of the body fatter and rounder, in strength and force impotent, nothing manly ne bold, the whiche imbecilitie in them, maye well be named imperfection. For imperfection is, whē that any perticuler creature doth lacke any propertie, instrument, or qualitie which commonly by nature

nature is in all other, or the more part of that kynde, comparynge it to other of the same kynde, & not of another kynde.

Thus we haue sufficiently talked of the seede bryngers & stones, with theyr offices. Nowe shall I declare what becommeth of the seede being thus engendred, and whyther it is conueyed.

¶ Of the way by the which the seede is sent from the stones to the angles and corners of the Matric. Cap. xi.



At the lower ende & foote or base of the braded body, wher it is infixed & planted into the head of the stone, on the backe syde halfe of the stone, there is the begynnynge of

another vessel, which may be called the seede carper, in Latin *Vas semen deferens*, whose body is whyte and hardishe, like an harde sinewe. And from that part where it taketh his begynnynge, it passeth

Of the seede carpers.

The first Booke.

seth downwardes to the syde of the stone, hoopyng and compassyng along the syde therof (as ye may more expressely perceiue in the figure hereof) tyll it come to the lower ende or base of the stone, from thence agayne resting or remountyng bywarde, creepyng along the other syde of the same stone, tyll it come and attayne in maner to the middle region of the stone on that side, at the way as it creepeth, firmly fastened and affixed to the body of the stones, as the eye braunches do fasted them selues to the walles, by which they creepe.

The belly and inner syde of the foresaide seede carier, wherby it cleaueth to the outsyde or face of the stone, beyng flattysh, the backe or outer syde therof roundyshe and smothe. From the begynnyng & head of this vessell, to this later ende in maner of equall corpulencie or bygnesse, but infinitely wreathed as an adder or yele when they flyde fast or hastly, make of theyr long bodies many halfe hoopes, halfe circles, or
Wreathes

Wreathes nere ioyned together: howebeit, these Wreathes be not so frequent and thicke in the woman as in the man. Therefore this parte of the seede cariers may be called the Worme, in Latin, *Corpus lumbricosum*, for because that it hath many conuolucions, as wormes lying together haue.

Of the part
called the
worme.

And yf ye be disposed to seperate this forenamed Worme from the face of the stone with a sharpe knyfe, ye shall perceaue no maner of holouesse or cavitie of vayne or other cōduite, but as it were a ruggednesse, by reason of seperation from the partie, to whom it was before so surely annexed. And yet no doubt, there is verely in it cavitie and holouesse, by and thoroowe the whiche seede is caried into the angles of the Matrix. Nowe then when this foresayde Worme body hath attayned to the myddle region (as it were) of the stone, it begynneth to depart frō the body of the stone, and is no more (as it was before) thicke

The first Booke.

thicke wreathed, but playne, smothe, & rounde, lyke a rounde sinewe, with an vn sensible holonesse, departyng frō the stone along the insyde of the belly, ouerthwartyng the guttes, to the angle or corner of the Matrix, on the ryght syde thereof (yf it proceade from the ryght stone) and on the left syde (if it come frō the left stone) and that not strayght or forthryght, but somewhat bowyng & cropyng it selfe in two or thre cokes by the way. These seede carpers receiue the seede conficted, concocted, and digested in the stones and foresaid seede byngers, conueying and directyng the same from the stones to the insyde of the corners of the Matrix, so that they whiche do open dead women, shall alwayes perceyue in the holownes of the Matrix, these two angles or corners speciallpe bedewed or imbued with a whyte slymye and thynne cleare matter, whiche no doubt is the womans seede. And in women hauyng greate
and

and feruent desire to any man, this seede doth issue from this foresayde place, downe along to the womans priuie passage, moistring all that part, as it were with a dewe. Aristotle and other mo, do suppose that this seede in woman, serueth for no other purpose, but onely to recite, moue, and stirre the woman to pleasure. But some peradventure would thinke that this were but a simple & an ydle or slender purpose, whiche if they did more nerely consider the matter, should perceyue it to be a iust, great, and necessary cause. For if that the god of nature had not instinced, and inset in the body of man and woman, such a vehement and ardent appetite and lust, the one lawfully to company with the other, neyther man ne woman would neuer haue ben so attentife to the workes of generation and encrease of posteritie, to the vtter decaye in shorte tyme of all mankinde. For ye shal heare some women in tyme of theyr trauaile, meued through great payne and intolerable

The prickes
of nature.

No ioy with
out some so-
rowe.

terable anguifhe, forfwearre and bowe
them felfe, neuer to company With a
man agayne, yet after that the panges
passed, Within fhort Whyle, for entyre
loue to theyr husbandes, and finguler
naturall delyte betwene man and wo-
man, they forget both the fozow passed,
and that that is to come. Suche be the
priuie Workes of God, and fuche be the
prickes of nature, which neuer createth
no fpeciall pleafure vnaccompanied
With fome fozowe, neyther is there for
the moft part any fozowe, but that it
hath annexed fome ioy or conifort, leffe
or more, to alleuiate and lyghten the
burthen and weyght of difpleafure.

Here is declared the fituation of the
blader in women.

Capit. xii

Now for the vicinite and neigh-
bourhood that is betwene the
priuie paffage and the bladder,
here I will declare a little the
nature of the bladder.

The

The bladder in woman is assituate and set vppon the forepart of the Mother, whose necke is annexed, fastened, & vnite within the priuie passage, vppon the forepart therof, as ye may see in the figure hereof, so that it is very harde to seperate the one from the other. This necke of the bladder in women is much shorter then in men, the whiche necke is enuironed and compassed with a Muskle, called the bladder Muskle, as it were with a brode and flat hoope ring, firming and clasping the vrine passage in such wise, that no vrine can issue out of the bladder, tyll such tyme that this Muskle do open it selfe, & licence it thereto: Which thing cometh to passe, other when the bladder is ouercharged with vrine, or els that the vrine, although that it be but little in qualitie, yet haue some Colericke qualitie with it, which for the sharpenes and eagernes of the qualitie prickynge and ticklyng the Muskle, causeth it to open it selfe manye tymes for little quantitie. &c.

The Muskle
of the bladder.

Howe the
bladder
Muskle is
forced to open
it selfe.

The

The descrip-
tion of the
bladder.

The body of the bladder is rounde, into the which a lyttle aboue the necke thereof, entreteth the seconde vrine conduites, deriued from eche kidney one.

And here ye must first vnderstande, that on eche syde of the great master vayne, and lyke wyle of the Artyre, is situate a kydney, in latin called *Ren*. And to euery of them from the sayde great vayne and great Artyre, is there deriued a braunche of the vayne, and another of the Artyre, by the which braunches the kydneys do attract and drawe bloud vnto them, the which so drawn, they do (by theyr natie office) seperate and deuide from the watery part, sending forth the water, otherwise called vrine downe to the bladder, through the vrine vaynes or conduites.

Of the stone
engendred
in the backe

In these kydneys is there many times in a great number of people, engendred the grauell or stone, which is called the stone in the backe, the which when it is broken, eyther of it selfe, or els by vertue of medicines, the grauell, rubbell, or pceces

peeces therof, descende from the raynes
or kidnees into the bladder, by the fore-
named vrine conduites, and so from the
bladder out at the yarde, where, yf the
peeces be rockie or bigge, it causeth to
the partie in the voydyng of them, un-
tollerable paynes and torment. And
note that for the moste part, the ryght
kydney euermore standeth hyer then
the lefte.

Nowe agayne ye shall vnderstande
that when the vrine, pisse, or water is
once entred through the foresayd vrine
conduites, into the bladder, it cannot
returne vpwarde againe the way that
it came (were the bladder neuer so full)
for because that where as the said vrine
conduites do enter into the bladder, in
the inner face of the bladder, there be set
before the mouth or gull of the condui-
tes, certaine litle skinnie flappes, which
suffer any thyng to enter in, but when
it is once entred, these skinnie flappes
close the passage, and defende, that no-
thyng can rebounde, ne reflue backe a-
gayne,

The vrine
once entred
into the
bladder, can
not reuert.

The first booke.

gayne, euen as it is in a payre of bellows, which haue euer a great hole on the one syde thereof, to let into the bellows great store of wynde or ayre at once, but when the bellows is full of wynde, yf ye stop the nose thereof with somwhat, there wyll none thereof returne agayne out by that waye, the flappes of leather crossing and defendyng the passage: yea, the more vehemently and the harder that ye presse both sydes of the bellows together, the faster and more stifly doth the flaps stop the way, and cleaue to the bordes of the bellows, the violence and force of the wynde closyng and stoppyng his owne way, so that the bellows would sooner breake, then that the ayre should come out there. And euen so it is in the bladder, sayyng that the sayde skinnie flappes of the bladder, be more craftyly, properly, and artificially wrought, then any man can deuise.

When there is then any notable quantitie or qualitie of the vryne, gathered

thered together in the bladder, the bladder Muskle naturally doth open it selfe, and letteth it forth, passyng thoroꝝ the priuie passage on the forepart thereof.

In this bladder also as in the raynes, is there in many people engendred the stone, whereof commonly ensueth the strangury, dissury, with other diseases. The stone engendred in this place, yf it be of any notable quantitie, is verye harde or rather vnpossible to be dissolued, or cured without insition and cuttyng out. But women be not so prone ne apt to engender the stone in the bladder as men be, because the necke of their bladder is shorter and larger, howbeit not withstanding, dyuers of them be herewith greuously encombred.

The stone engendred in the bladder.

¶ Of the vaynes whiche resort to the Matrix and the partes thereof. Item of the termes and their course with the causes therof.

Capit. xiiii.

Nasmuche as the absolute vnderstandyng of the nature of the termes in women, cannot well be perceiued, except first it be knowen what vaines, how many, from whence, & after what sort they do attayne to the Matrix, therefore first I wyll entreate of them, & then cōsequently of the termes.

Three notable vaines resorting to the Matrix.

Waynes then notable, which may be perceyued by Anothomie to reach from severall partes of the great *Vena caua*, or master vayne, to the Matrix and the partes therof, be thzee, to whom for the more cleare, distinct, and euident doctrine sake, I will geue thzee distinct and diuers names. The fyrst shalbe named the bottome vaines of the Matrix. The second, the necke vaines of the Matrix. The thyrde, the share vaines.

The bottome vaines of the Matrix.

The bottome vaines be they, which proceade and take theyr beginning at the seede bringer vaines, from whence they attayne to the bottome or founde of the Matrix, there dilatyng them-
selfe

selfe brode in manyfolde small flippes,
nouryng the body of the Matrix, as
hath ben sayde alre dye in the ende of
the .ix. Chapter.

As touching the necke baynes of the
Matrix, ye shall vnderstande that in the
foresaid .ix. Chapter, I shewed you how
that the great maister bayne, and the
great artire associate together, when
they attayne about *Os sacrum*, they begin
to deuide them selues in two partes
forke wyse, of the whiche the ryght (& so
lyke wyse the left) part of the forke is re-
diuided in other two partes forke wyse
also, wherof the vppermost and grea-
test bayne passeth downe along tyll it
come to the hockle bone, ouer whom it
proceadeth into the vtter parte of the
thygh, & so along downe to the legges
and feete. The innermost and lefte or
smaller part or bayne of this second di-
uision, where it parteth from the vpper-
most, passeth downe along vntyll
it come to the great hole whiche is al-
wayes in the share bone, thorow which

The necke
baynes.

The first Booke.

Of the necke
vaynes of the
Matrix.

The share
vaynes.

it entereth into the inner parte of the
thygh or flanke. But by the way, or it
attayne the saide hole of the sharebone,
it sendeth forth diuers slippes and smal
braunches in the necke of the Matrix,
and the nether parte of the body of the
Matrix, and also to the bladder, as ye
may more clearly se in the figure hereof

The share vaynes take theyr begyn-
nyng at the insyde of the abouenamed
vppermost and greatest vayne, euen at
the place where it beginneth to passe o-
uer the hockle bone, frō whence this slip
is deriued on eche syde, that is, both the
ryght and the lefte, vnto the myddle of
the share bone, where in men it sendeth
forth braunches into the skinne that co-
uereth the priuie parte and the coddles,
& also the *Perineum*, whiche is the place
that is betwene the fundament and
the yarde. In women this vaine where
it attayneth the myddle parte of the
sharebone, it deryueth and spreadeth it
selfe into the lappes sydes or extreame
ende of the priuie passage, and also in
the

the sayde *Perineum*. And this shall suffice for the declaration of the vayne which resort to the Matrix and her partes, saue that ye muste vnderstande, that loke what order or procession of vaynes commeth to the Matrix from the right syde, the same selfe order is lykewyse in the lefte syde. And agayne, that none of these vaynes runne to the Matrix or otherwhere, vnassociaie of an Arterie.

Nowe to come to the declaration of the nature of termes, ye shall vnderstand that they be called in Latin *Menstrua*, so, because that once in a moneth they happen alwayes to womankind after .xiiii. or .xv. yeres of age passed (beyng in theyr perfect health) In Englyshe they be named *Termes*, because they resourne eftsoones at certayne seasons, tymes and termes, and some name them theyr flowers. What name soeuer ye geue vnto it, ye shall witte, that the thyng meant thereby, is nothyng els but the issuing of certayne bloud,

What is meant by this worde *Termes*.

comprehended in the vaines of the Matrix, there by little and little collected and gathered betwene terme & terme, and so agayne at wont and accustomed tymes, by nature expelled and sente forth.

The which bloud, the Matrix vaines do attract from the great *vena cava*, into this part, and that not sodaynely or at once, but very soberly, and with much leasure, yea, so muche as there is space betwene the one hauyng of the flowres and the other (which is conionly three wekes, more or lesse, accordyng to the womans wont) so long be these sayde baynes in fyllyng, and yf they were soner full, soner also woulde they sende it forth againe. For when they be once replenysed, they can not conueniently or naturally containe or drawe any more, tyll they be lyghtned and discharged of that that is drawn alredy.

Wherfore at the foresayde certayne circuities and termes, the smal endes of these Matrix baynes open them selues
in

in the inner face or superficie of the Matrix, after an insensible & secrete priuie sort, and so let to passe forth this bloud, which as I haue sayd, is called the womans termes.

The cause and reason why nature created this perpetual course of termes in women, is this: forsomuche as almyghtie God had so institute that women shoulde be conceaued, efformed, or fassioned, augmented, nourysed, and brought to perfection. This coulde not be done vnlesse there were a commodious and conuenient place to this office assigned and destinate, whereof nature created the wombe or Matrix to be the sayde receptacle, & house of office wherein she mought at her leasure worke her deuine feates about the seede once conceaued.

Agayne it is not inough the seede to be placed, vnlesse also it haue foode and nourysment, to the encrease and augmentation of the same, wherefore prudent Lady nature full wisely hath provided

The cause of the ordinance of termes.

The first Booke.

uided, that there shoulde alwayes be prest and redy a continuall course and resort of bloud in the vaines of the Matric, as a very naturall course, spryng, fountayne or Well, euermore redy to arise Water, and nourishe the feature, so sone as it shalbe conceiued, yea although the Woman do neuer conceiue, other because she accompanieth not with man, other els for some other infirmitie, yet is there no faulte in nature, who hath prepared a place and foode to be at all tymes in a redynesse.

Which foode, although it is ordeined for this necessary purpose, yet when the purpose fayleth (as it doth when there is no feature in the wombe to be fedde therewith) it shoulde be to the place but a burthen and vnprofitable load there to remaine or lynger, wherfore when I say, at her set and prescrip^{tion} she laboureth to cleare her self of it, and to expell it as superfluous and seruing to no vse. The which thing when she hath so done, yet vnto the sayde vaynes of this

con

continuall spryng, resorteth of newe a-
gayne other freshe bloud in the place of
that that is departed, whiche by litle
and litle coling into them, in the wont
circuite of time refilleth them, and then
yet issueth agayne, and so this continu-
al course doth kepe alwayes in women,
from theyr youth, tyll they come to a-
bout fyftie yeres of age, or litle more or
lesse, at what time naturally this spring
dryeth away, which when it is gone, it
is impossible for the woman to beare a-
ny mo children. For were the womā ne-
uer so yong & lusty, yet yf she neuer had
her termes (as some suche there be) she
shal neuer also haue no childrē, albeit it
may be that she may conceaue, but the
seede conceaued can not proue, but mel-
teth & issueth forth agayne for lacke of
nutriment. Itē ye shal note, that where
as some wryte & saye that the womens
termes folowe the course of the moone,
so that in the full or in the wane of the
moone they shuld alwayes come, this is
not true, for they haue them at one time
and

They that
haue no ter-
mes can not
beare childrē

The first Booke.

Termes
come not to
all women
lyke.

and other in all seasons of the moone. Againe, as they come not to all women after one sort, or at one season, so is the tyme of theyr duraunce not all one in e- uery woman, for in some they lenger vpon them. v. vi. vii. yea .viii. dayes at ech terme, to their great esseoblishment and strong paines in the backe. In some other cōmonly they passe not the space of thre dayes at the vttermost, where- fore such sustayne litle or no paynes at that tyme.

To be short, all women (for the most part) which be of very delicate & moyst complexions (as the sanguyne chieflie be) haue greatest abundance of termes, and longer tyme doth it endure vpon them. And contrary, such as be drie and colerike, other by nature, or labour and trauayle, & such that be of complection cold, haue least store of termes, and lesse tyme do they indure vpon them. After what maner the feature conceaued is fedde and nourysed with this bloudde (matter at other times of the termes) I
Wyll

Wyll declare, When that I haue some
What first shewed the nature of cer-
tayne caules, wherein the feature con-
ceyued is wrapped and inuolued.

¶ Of the three caules or wrappers
wherein the Infant is lapped.

Capit. xiiii.



The seede conceyued
into the wombe or
matrix of the Mo-
ther, anon it is am-
plected, clipped, &
embrased of the in-
ner face of the Ma-
trix, the mouth or
port thereof in the

The feature
conceyued is
wrapped in
three caules.

meane whyle closed and shut exquisite-
lye. The seede then when it hath ben a
certayne little space in the wombe, by
the naturall heate, or rather by the in-
set and ingenite vertue of that place, is
enuironed & enclosed rounde with three
dyuers coates, caules, or wrappers,
whiche in Latine they call (*Inuolucra.*)

The first and moſte immediate or
nearest

The first booke.

The fyrr
caule.

nearest to the body of the conception, is a very thinne and cleare caule or skinne, whiche contayneth rounde about the whole feature, and yet is fastened to no part of the feature, but onlye at the nauell, by certayne vayne and Artyres, whereof we wylle take anone, this caule in Greke is called *Ammios*, in Latine *Agnua*, for cause it is as dilicate as lambe be. The Midwifes commonly call it the coyfe or byggyn of the chylde, and some call it the chylde's shert, the which also manye tymes procedeth alone with the childe, eyther vpon the childes head, or one of the armes or legges. And then the women referue it as a thyng that shoulde betoken some great lucke to the chylde in tyme to come, for they beleue that euery chylde hath not such a coyfe, because it doth appeare but seldome alone, vnaccompanied with the other caules. Betwene this wrapper or coyfe, and the body of the infant, is collected and gathered the yelowish sweat which euaporeth continually from the
skyn

skinne of the infant, Whylest it is in the Wombe.

The second Wrapper or caule in Greke is called *Allantoides*, in Latin *Farciminosa*, in Englishe, these two termes do signifie (haggiswise) for because that it is fashioned much after the shape of the outward skinne or bagge of an haggisse pudding. The inner face and superficie of this caule is smoth and moyste, fastened to no part of the first Wrapper, but onlye at the nauell of the chylde, and contayneth also rounde about in his compasse and cavitie or holownes, the whole childe and the saide first caule.

The seconde wrapper.

Betwene this and the fyrst caule, is gathered together all the store of vryne that the chylde maketh, durynge the time it is in the mothers Wombe, where in the industry of nature is to be lauded, which so prouideth, that this pisse or vryne of the infant should be expelled betwene these two caules, and not remaine about the body therof, lest with the acrimonye, and eager sharpenesse hereof

Where the vryne of the childe becometh.

hereof, it should endamage and greewe
the tender body of the baby.

The thyrde
wrapper na-
med Chorion

The thyrde wrapper of the feature
is named *Chorion* of the Greekes, in La-
tin, *secunde* or *secundina*, in Englishe ye may
call it the secundine: Albeit that in the
seconde booke folowynge, I do common-
lye vse to name the hole afterbyrth, the
secundine. And no doubt but that the
auncientes which gaue the name of (*se-
cunde* or *secundina*) to this wrapper, gaue
the name of the whole to the part, for
this terme (*secunde* or *secundina*) is proper &
moſte due to the afterbyrth, the which
afterbyrth, is nothing els but an issu-
yng forth, and procedyng of these three
wrappers or caules, together with such
grosse extrementes as haue ben engen-
dred and remaynyng in the wombe, du-
ryng the tyme of conception, and that
immediatly after the childe is fyrst pro-
ceaded & come to lyght, for first issueth
the infante, and then secondly, the fore-
said afterbyrth, & therfore it maybe iust-
lye called the second birth or secundine.

This

This Wrapper or caule then, doth not vniuersally, and in euery part compasse and couer the infante, as the other two Wrappers do, but onlye the myddle region, as it were from the vpper part of the waste, to the share of the infante, so that it is compassed with this Wrapper as with a broade hoope rynge, the latitude or breadth whereof, is commonly to be esteemed about the breadth of. vi. or. viii. fingers, and so girdeth the childe round about the body therof, as it were a broade gyrt or swadlyng bande, but yet ye must not vnderstand that it shuld touche immediatly the body of the infant, for betwene this and the bodye therof (as I haue declared before) be the foresaid two other caules or Wrappers, whiche generally incloseth rounde the whole corps of the infant, wher as this hoope caule compasseth and couereth but the middle region therof only.

The office and propertie of this Wrapper is suche: fyrst the vtter face of it cleaueth and is affixed or basted verye

The office
of the hoops
caule

The first booke.

exactly to the inner face and walles of the Matrix, by meanes of vnumerable small baynes and artires, which at this tyme do shewe them selues more clearly in the face of the matrix, then at any other time, the which also cleaue vnto this hoope caule in euery parte thereof, touching the same Matrix, so that the said hoope caule and the inner syde of the Matrix be basted very thicke together, by the immediat meanes of the sayde baynes and braunches, euen much lyke as the body of the Iuy tree basteth and fasteneth it selfe vnto the walles or trees, whereby it crepeth by many hearie fibres or small thredes.

This coniunction betwene the Matrix and the hoope caule, reacheth vniuersally so farre and so broade, as the latitude and longitude of the hoope caule doth extende it selfe rounde about in the Matrix. And these foresaid baynes and artires do not only knyght and vnite these two together, but also entreth into the substance of the hoope caule at euery part

part thereof. And within the sayd substance of the hoope caule, these manyfold small braunches meete, & enter mingle the one with the other, the vayne with the vayne, and the Artires with the Artires, so that in theyre recountre and meetyng, they produce alwayes bigger and bigger vaynes and artires, (but fewer) tyll at the last all these become two great vaynes, and two great artires, the whiche foure vessels from hence proceade together, passe and perse through the other two caules spoken of before, and so entreteth into the Nauill of the childe, so that the thre caules by the meanes hereof be attached, nayled, and fastened to the childes Nauill, and when they be entred into the Nauill, the two vaynes degenerate in one, the whiche fro this place mounteth vpward along the inner superficie of the belly, vntill it haue attained into the liuer, wher it entering, deuideth it self again into many flippes, so that no doubt the bloud is carried through this Nauill vayne, fro the

G 2

vaynes

The first booke.

vaynes of the mothers Matrix into the liuer of the childe, from whence againe it is attracted into al partes nourishable of the Infant.

Agayne, the two Artyres passe from the Nauell downewarde, the one along the ryght syde of the chyldes bladder, the other alonge the left, till it attayne to the share Artires, whereof we spake before. Thoro we these Artires, liuely spirite and freshe ayre is deriued out of the mother, into the chylde, where with the naturall heate of the chylde is viuified and refreshed.

And these two Artires with the foresayde nauill vayne, when the chylde is borne, begin to wyther and drye, every day more and more, & become much like a harpestring, without any holownes or cauitie. Yet ye shall note that there is another vessell, which taketh his originall at the bottome, founde, or vpper part of the chyldes bladder, and extendeth it selfe to the nauill of the Infant, through which it passeth vntill it come
betwene

betwene the first and the seconde caule
without the chyldes body, where, by a
priuie issue deuised by nature for the
same purpose, is expelled the urine of
the Infant, proceeding by this urine
wayne from the bladder, as partly was
spoken of before, that part of this urine
vaine which is within the body, when
the chyld is borne dryeth and wythe-
reth away, as I sayde of the other.

Which way
the chyld
doth expell
the urine.

The innen superficie or face of this
Chorion is very strongly affixed and faste-
ned to the vtter superficie of the seconde
caule named *Allantoides*.

As for the bastynge that is betwene
the *Matrix* and *Chorion*, many tymes it
is weakened and effeoblyshed by reason
of euyll, fleigmaticke, or colericke hu-
mours there about, betwene the bastin-
ges conceaued, whiche ouermuch ha-
bouiding, do cloy the said bastynge vaines
or strynges, whereby many tymes the
one seuereth from the other before con-
uenient season, & so causeth aborcement
The mouthes or specks of the vaines in

The second Booke.

The substance
of
Chorion.

the Matrix, wherby it cleaueth to Chorion
be called in Latin *Acetabula* & *Cotiledones*, for
what cause, or vpon what reason, is both
needlesse and vnprofitable here to be re-
hearsed. Agayne, the substance of this
Chorion is not thinne lyke a skin, bladder,
or call: but of all other partes of the bo-
dy, it may be most worthily resembled
to the spleane or melt in a man or beast,
the corpulencie or thicknes whereof, is
as much or more as the thicknes of the
thumbe, the colour swartishe black. Of
which colour also the bloud therein con-
teyned, is as the remayne and refuse of
the purer, attract and drawen natural-
lye of the Infant, by the aboue named
nauyll vaine. So that, to be short, Chorion
is the immediat receptacle and receiuer
of all the vaynes and artires, to be dedu-
ced from the Matrix to the chylde, and
the chylde receiueth only at his hande
the two Vaynes and Artires, whiche
by the waye as they passe & pearse thro-
row the other two calles, towards the
chylde's Nauyll, they sende into eche of
the

the caules innumerable small eye vaynes and artires, whereby the caules be susteyned, and encreased also.

The Termes then which were wont at other times to stooze theselues in the Matrix vaynes, and at certayne circuites to issue forth. Nowe when there is a feature or chyld in the same Matrix conceaued, they proceade no more forth (as superfluous) but remaine and be reserved to the necessary nutriment of the feature, and some part therof reflueth & is reuerted to the womens brestes, there to become mylke, as shalbe sayde in the next Chapter. And nowe hath nature her purpose wherfore she made and created this course of bloud, as hath ben written sufficiently in the Chap. before.

But here ye shall note, that they be greatly deceiued & abused, whiche call the Termes the womans purgation, or the clensyng of theyr bloudde, as who should say, that it were the refuse, drosse and vyle part of the other bloudde remaining in the body, naturally every

The first Booke.

The termes
be of so hol-
some blood,
as any other
parte in the
body.

The chyld
beyng in the
wombe, no-
ryshed of the
purest blood.

moneth sequestrate and seperated from
the purer, for the vilitie and euill quali-
tie therin comprehended. For vndoubt-
edly this blood is euen as pure & hol-
some as all the reste of the blood in any
part of the body els.

Is it to be thought, that nature would
feede the tender & dilicate Infant in the
mothers Wombe, with the refuse of the
blood, or not rather with the purest of
it: Yes, and therfore for because that she
woulde that the pure blood commyng
frō the Matrix baynes should be made
yet purer, she suffereth not the same to
enter immediatly into the Infant, but
first vseth another meane, and sendeth
it into *Chorion* or the hoope cal (as I haue
sayd before) where truely it hath a cer-
tayne circulation and another digesti-
on, wherby it is defecate, and clenfed ve-
ry exquisitly, by the diligencie of nature
attenuated and fined, and so at the laste
sent forth into the Infant, leauyng all
the grosser part in the spungy bodye of
the hoope caule.

Yet much more are to be detested and
 abhorred the shamefull lyes and flaunder that Plinie, *Albertus magnus de secretis mulierum*, and diuers other mo haue Written,
 of the venemous and daungerous infectiue nature of the womans flowres or termes, the whiche all be but dreames and playne dotage. To rehearse theyr fond wordes here, were but losse of inke & paper, wherefore let them passe with theyr auctours.

Slaunders of
 the termes.

¶ Which of the thre Matric baynes conteyne the termes, and howe the mylke commeth to the womans brestes.

Cap. xv.



Shewed you here before, that to thre different partes & regions of the Matric, there resorted from thre different partes of *vena caua*, thre sundrie bayne slippes. Now whiche of these slippes shoulde byng the
 bloud

The first Booke.

bloud called the Termes into the Matrix, or from which of them the Termes shoulde proceade, it is harde clearely to discusse, but only by lykely coniectures. And yet it is a thying very necessary to be known, for the redyer aduertisement howe medicines for that purpose shoulde be applied in that place, when neede shoulde be, eyther to prouoke the Termes by some casualtie stopped, or els contrary, to restrayne them immoderately flowyng. For yf the bottome baynes of the Matrix do contayne only the Termes, then shoulde any medicine conueyed vnderneath profyte nothyng, except it be conueyed so farre vp, that it maye attayne within the holownesse of the Matrix, the whiche is verye litle when the woman is not with chylde.

Agayne, yf the necke baynes of the Matrix do only conteyne these termes, then neded medicines to be applyed no farther then to that place. As for the thirde Matrix baynes, there is none
that

that doth once suspecte the Termes to proccade from them: But many there be, which do suppose the termes to issue both at the necke vaines and at the bot-
tome vaines also, but most notably at the necke vaines, for because (say they) that these vaines do appeare more con-
spicuous and notable to the eyes when a woman is cut open, then do the bot-
tome vaines, which may be very skant-
ly perceiued, wherfore they thinke that these necke vaines shoulde be the grea-
ter stirrer of Termes.

Agayne (say they) we se many tymes that after the woman is conceaued, yet doth ther issue Termes tyl the third or fourth, yea sometymes the fyfth mo-
neth, the which nowe at this tyme can not proccade out of the Matrix, for the port or mouth therof, according to auc-
thours opinions, is so closed after the seede conceaued, that the poynt of a nee-
dle can not enter but by violence and force. Wherfore they conclude, that the Termes at this tyme muste needes
spryng

spring out of the necke vayne, and not out of the bottome vaines.

To those I aunswere, that both at this tyme and at all other tymes, the Termes issue onely out of the bottome vaines, & out of such of the necke vaines as spreade them selfe onely within the Matrix, as maye be seene in the figure. For insomuch as nature dyd create the course of Termes for no other cause, but onely to be a preast and redye foode at all tymes to the feature conceaued, to what purpose shoulde the Termes in the necke vaines of the Matrix serue, where there can neuer be any conception, nether the seede there can remayne? And as concernyng the issuing of the Termes after conception, I saye that the port of the Matrix is neuer so exactly close, but that such a liquid thing as bloud is, may thryll and coole out of it, yea although (as they say) the poynt of a nedle can not enter in thereat. For ye may see, that betwene the chynes and chynkes of closelye ioyned boordes,

the

the poynte of a nedle wyll not easely enter, yet water or any other liquid thing, may passe through without lette, and euen so is it in the Matrix.

And yet for all this, it shall not folow that the seede shoulde passe out therat, as well as the bloud, for the seede is of a more fast, compacte, and stedfaste substance. And besydes this, by that time that the seede hath ben but a daye or two in the Matrix, it waxeth yet more stable and stedfast, by the natural heate of the place, yea, and is compassed with a thinne ryme, as a tender egge is vnder the shell, wherefore it wyll not so soone issue out of the Matrix without great iniury.

Here agayne ye shall note the cause why that Physicians do counsell women which be desirous to conceaue, and can not for lubricitie, moystnes, or waterynes of the Matrix (whereby the attractife and attentife power of the Matrix is debilitat and weakened) to take fumes and vapours vnderneath, or other
medi-

medicines at the mouth, to dry the sayd humidities, immediatly after the Termes be passed, and not vppon the comming of them, for yf the woman should be conceyued vpon the comming of the sayde Termes, then woulde they commixt them self with the seede, before the seede haue gotten yet any perfect rime or caule, whereby the seede shoulde become the thinner, and be made fluy, and so to passe forth agayne out of the Matrix, washed out with the termes.

But immediatly after that the Termes be passed, if the seede be conceyued, then shall it haue sufficient tyme to get a strong rime or caule ouer it, before the Termes come agayne. And agayne, whyles the little speckes or mouthes of the Matrix vaines be yet open, after the lettynge forth of the Termes, they shall be the more apt to cleaue and to ioyne the selues with the feature, by meanes of caules wherein the feature is inuolued, and chiefly of *Chorion* named the hoope caule, as hath ben sufficiently sayde

sayde here before.

Yet when the seede hath ben thre or
foure weekes in the wombe, it is not of
sufficient quantitie to consume into his
nourishment al the blood that was wont
to resort into the Matrix vaines, wher-
fore the first, second, yea, & third moneth
sometimes at the womans wont tyme
of Termes, there issueth and sheweth
some blood more or lesse, the more in the
whiche were wont at other tymes to
haue aboundaunce of them. &c. And ye
shall note that when the child is concei-
ued, & that the caule *Chorion* is fastened &
basted to the matrix by the vaines ther-
of, yet do not al the vaines of the matrix
attaine to the said *Chorion*, but a certaine
so far as *Chorion* doth reach, howbeit the
larger that *Chorion* groweth with the child,
the moore vaines doth he couer, wherfore
fro those vaines that be not yet affixed
vnto *Chorion*, do the termes flow at this
time: But when the child beginneth once
to come to a greater perfectiō & growth,
then is all the Terme bloude reserved
in

in the Matrix, as little enough to satisfie the chylde, and then also part thereof mounteth vpon into the brestes, and becometh mylke, as shalbe sayde hereafter.

¶ Yet agayne to confirme myne opinion, that the Termes do onely issue out of the vauite of the Matrix: Ye shall vnderstande, that at sundry tymes I haue had two diuers Women in cure, the one in London, and the other in Paris: Of which, the one by a fall of her horse, the other by a violent thruste and squat on the buttockes vpon the harde stones in the street, beyng both neare the tyme of theyr purgation, chaunced also both of them into one maner of disease (that is to say) immediatly herevppon, theyr Termes dyd issue. And so continued dayly to the one of them, the space of halfe a yere, & to the other a whole yere, so that after that tyme the Termes stayed agayne, and issued no more dayly as before, but once in foure wekes, at what tyme they voyded great lumpes, kakes, or cloddes of bloud, congealed together
 even

euē lyke the liuer of a beast. And in the meane tyme, betwene eche voydyng of these lumpes of bloud, (Whiche as I haue sayde come to passe once in foure wekes) euery day continually appeared and issued there whyte flowres (as they named it.)

Nowe to declare, the particuler occasions of this maner of voydyng of the Termes, ye shal vnderstand, that by the force of the fall and squat, the Matrix baynes brake, and that so muche the more promptly, that they were the fuller of bloud, and that nerer theyr tyme of purgation, vppon whiche bracke, the bloud dayly issued afterward, whereby the vigour & kinde heate of the Matrix, by little and little decreased and decayed, frigiditie and coldnes succeeded. By whiche occasion also the mouth or port of the Matrix, waxed the more contract and narrower, for colde closeth, knitteth and congeleth, hereto helpyng not a little the great vse of colde byndyng medicines, whiche eche of them dyd apply to

The first booke.

this place at the simple counsaile of ignorant persons.

The port then of the Matrix by this occasion closed and contracted, the blood went alwayes dayly to procede, remaineth within the Matrix, where as fast as it droppeth and cooleth out of the baynes, it congeleth and cluddereth together, lyke as ye may see, that when a man is let blood in a basin or other vessel, and that the blood stande styll in it, the space of. v. or. vi. houres, it wylbe concret and congiled in a cludder lyke a lyuer, the watery part thereof swimming and flitting aboue vpon the face of it: and even so is it of the blood congiled in the Matrix, so that when there is so muche of this congiled blood concealed together in the said matrix, that it can not contayne it any lenger, then violently and perforce, it issueth out together, with farre greater perill, danger, and dolour to the woman, then though she laboured with a childe.

The whyte flowres that yssued, during

ring the time that this bloud gathered in the Matrix, was (no doubt) the very wateryshe part, that fleted when the bloud congeled, for that water can neuer congele as the bloud doth, wherfore euery day as fast as the bloud dyd congele in the Matrix, so faste also dyd the water seperate it selfe from the bloud, and so yssued.

Notwithstanding I am not ignorant that the very white flowres in dede do proceade from the seede cariers, into the angles or corners of the Matrix, and so frō thence outwarde, the which disease also men haue many tymes. And it comnieth eyther of the aboundaunce of fleugme in the body, or of the corruptiō and euill qualitie mixed in the seede. &c.

These examples as I suppose may be sufficient evidences, that the Termes spring alwaies frō within the Matrix, & not from any part of the necke therof. Item I haue sene diuers other women, in whom their Termes haue staid, the space of. vi. viii. & x. wekes, wherewith

The first booke.

their bellies haue encreased and waxed bigger, so that they haue thought themselves to be with chylde. Notwithstanding, at the last haue voyded suche lyke lumpes of bloud, as I haue spoken of here before, not without great peryll and daunger to them in the voydyng, wherewithall their bellies haue relaxed and decreased agayne. And thus I make an ende, to talke any more of the nature and course of the Termes, and now wil I declare somewhat of the conueyaunce & course of the milke into the womans brestes, for there is great affinitye, communitie, and familiaritie betwene the Matrix and the brestes, whiche naturally do perceyue and feele anon, when the Matrix hath conceived and then begin they to brye & to make ready theyr part, agaynst the time that the Matrix hath all done her part, that is, agaynst the chylde be borne. The mylke whiche commeth to the brestes, is engendred of the Termes (according to mooste mens opinions.)

But

But to knowe whiche way the sayde Terme shoulde attayne from the Matrix to the breastes, ye shall vnderstand, that the vppermost and greatest vayne of the seconde diuision, spoken of in the xiii. chap. Where it attaineth the hockle bone, redye to passe out of the holonesse of the belly into the thigh, before that it perse the kell called *Peritonium*, it sendeth forth a notable vayne braunch, which from hence mounteth vwarde alonge the belly betwene the right Muskle and the ouerthwart, til it come a litle aboue the nauell, where the extreme or vpper ende thereof deuideth it selfe in many folde litle braunches, meetyng and entermynglyng them selues with the extreme litle braunches or slippes of another lyke vayne, descendyng from the vppermost chestbone, downe along the insyde of the chest, and the insyde of the vpper part of the belly, vntyll it meete with the foresayde mountyng vayne, a litle aboue the nauell.

And ye shall note, that this vayne

braunche proceeding from *vena cava*, at the highest chestbone downward along the inner syde of the chest or brest, by the way as it passeth, it yeldeth certayne little slippes and small braunches of it self betwene the ribbes into the brestes. Wherfore the consent of all aucthours is, that by the meanes of these descending wayne braunches at both sides of the body, & the other ascending wayne braunches on both sydes of the belly, there shoulde be great communitie and feloweship betwene the brestes in women, and the Matrix or the Wombe.

For doutlesse by common experience, ye may se that when the time of conception in women is, & that by this meanes the termes be stopped, then as the termes do deminish and waxe lesse, so doth the mylke in the brestes encrease and waxe euery daye more & more, as who might say that the superfluitie of bloud wonte at other tymes to voyde in the name of termes, now at this tyme by the prouidencie and prouisiō of nature, is
retay:

retayned as no superfluitie, but rather a necessary humour, reuerted and destinate another waye, that is to say, sent from the vayne of the Matrix parte thereof vpwarde by the forenamed ascending vayne branches, at their handes agayne receiued and naturally attracted by the other descending vrest vaines, through whom it is carped into the brestes, where by newe naturall circulations it is digested into whyte mylke, being before red bloud, redy now prepared to noryshe the chyld when nature shall sende it into the worlde. At Agayne, so long as the woman geuech sucke to the chyld, & hath store of mylke in her brestes, her termes be of very little or no quantitie. These be evidences that there should be great familiaritie betwene the Matrix and the brestes, for so much as the ebbing of the one is the flowing of the other. Wherefore Physicians sometimes, when the flowres issue more vehemently than needeth, they set voryng glasses vnder the

The first Booke.

brestes, meanyng therby to reuert and
returne bpwarde, the matter enclined
to much downewarde, the which prac-
tise how much it preuaileth, I Wyl not
here dispute. Yet in this matter to dis-
cusse the very veritie as neare as reason
and the knowledge of Anothomie Wyl
geue leaue, ye shall not vnderstande my
sayinges that I shoulde meane that al-
ways when the termes stoppe beneath
by any colde, thought, or other occasi-
ons, by and by the same bloude to stye
and mount vp into the brestes, & there
to become milke: for the contrary here
of is dayly seene. For most commonlye
they in whom these termes do stop, for
any other cause then conception, the su-
perfluous bloud retayned in the body,
and in the vaynes wandryng, causeth
to the partie great headache, taketh a-
way theyr stomacke, and engendreth
diuers other inconueniences, neither in
the meane whyle is ther any thyng the
more mylke in the brestes.

Wherfore ye may well saye, that the
cause

cause of plentie of mylke in the womā's brestes in time of her being with chylde, and much more afterwarde, commeth chiefly by a priuie naturall instinction, whereby it is geuen vnto the brestes at that tyme more then at any other, to draw vnto it selfe greater abundaunce of bloud, conuerting and altering the same by the propertie of the place, into conuenient mylke.

It is not a sufficient cause to replenishe the brest, the Termes to be by any occasion stopped beneath, but there must also concurre the attractiue power, inset in the brestes to drawe the sayde bloud (matter at ocher tymes of the Termes) without which attraction, be the Termes neuer so long stopped, yet shall the brestes be nothing the fuller, if it chaūce that this attractiue power halte or be not able to attract sufficient matter to make mylke vpon for the Infant, then Phisitians are wont to help the debilitie of nature, with cuppyng glasses set vpon or vnder the brestes, or els with gentle

the attractive emplaſters applied to the ſame places.

And although that into the breaſtes do reſorte great ſtoze of other vaynes, ſome deſcending from the vaines of the ſhoulders, & other ſome from the vaines paſſyng by the armeholes into the armes and handes, the which in moyſon and notable bygneſſe, much ſurmout the quantitie of the abouenamed deſcendyng breaſt vaynes, as it maye appeare evidently in many Women which haue theſe vaynes appearing in the ſuperficie of their breaſtes immediatly vnder the ſkin, very conſpicious & ſightful: yet not withſtandynge it is thought by ſtrong coniectures, that the mylke in the breaſtes ſhould be engendred onely vpon the blood mountyng from the aforeſayde aſcendyng Matrix vaynes, and not vpon the blood conteyned in the other vaynes, howe conſpicious ſo euer they be, ſo that the blood in them comprehended, ſerueth onely to the nouriſhment of the ſubſtaunce of the breaſtes

vestes themselves, and not to the main-
tenance of the mylke.

To declare here curiously the maner
that nature vseth in circulatynge of the
attracted bloud, wherby alterations is
made from one colour to another, wold
require a longer processe, the which for
brevitie we wil omit at this time, with
many other problemes, doubtles, and
difficulties concernynge the same. And
so we make an ende of this first Booke.

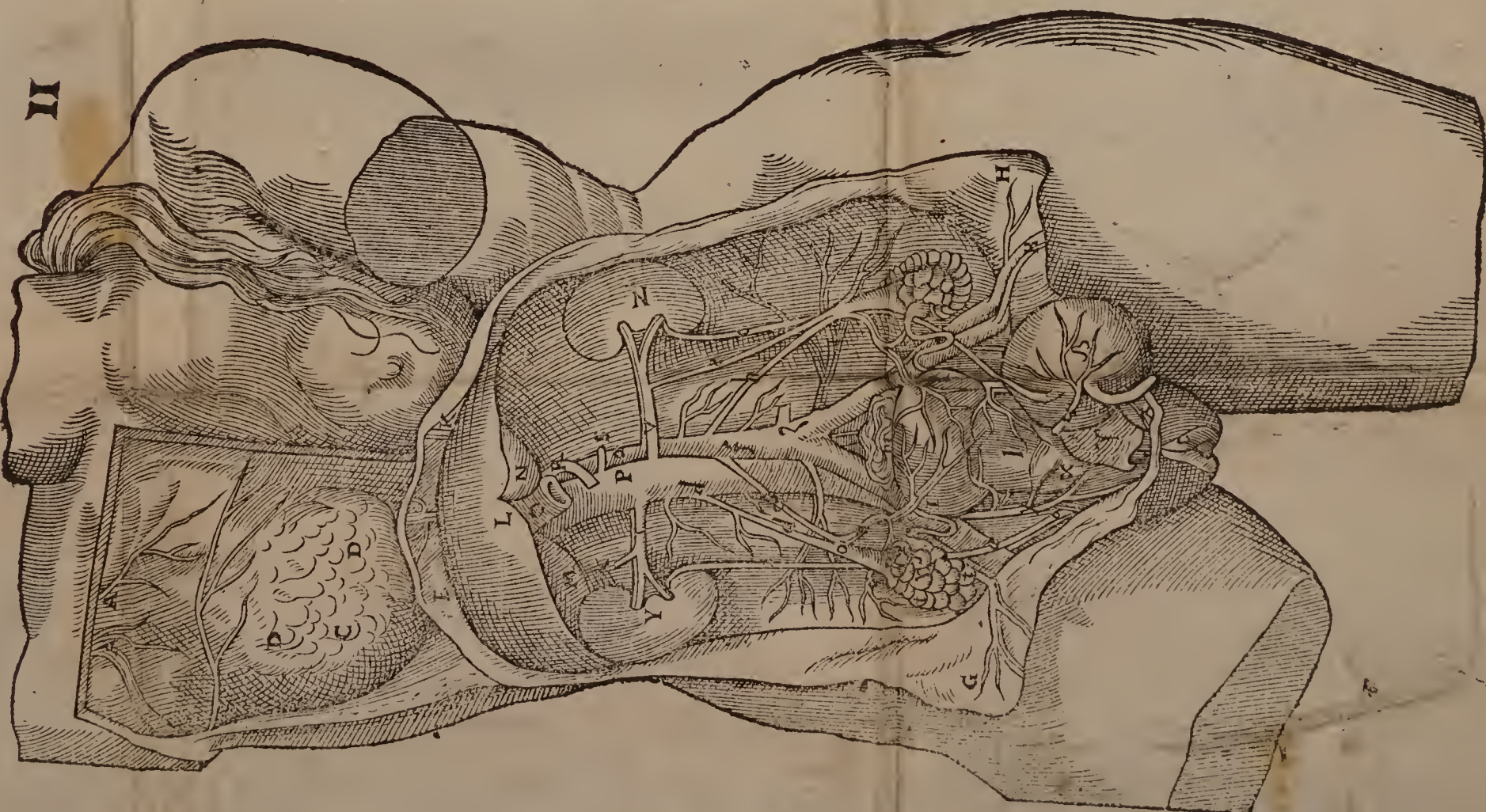
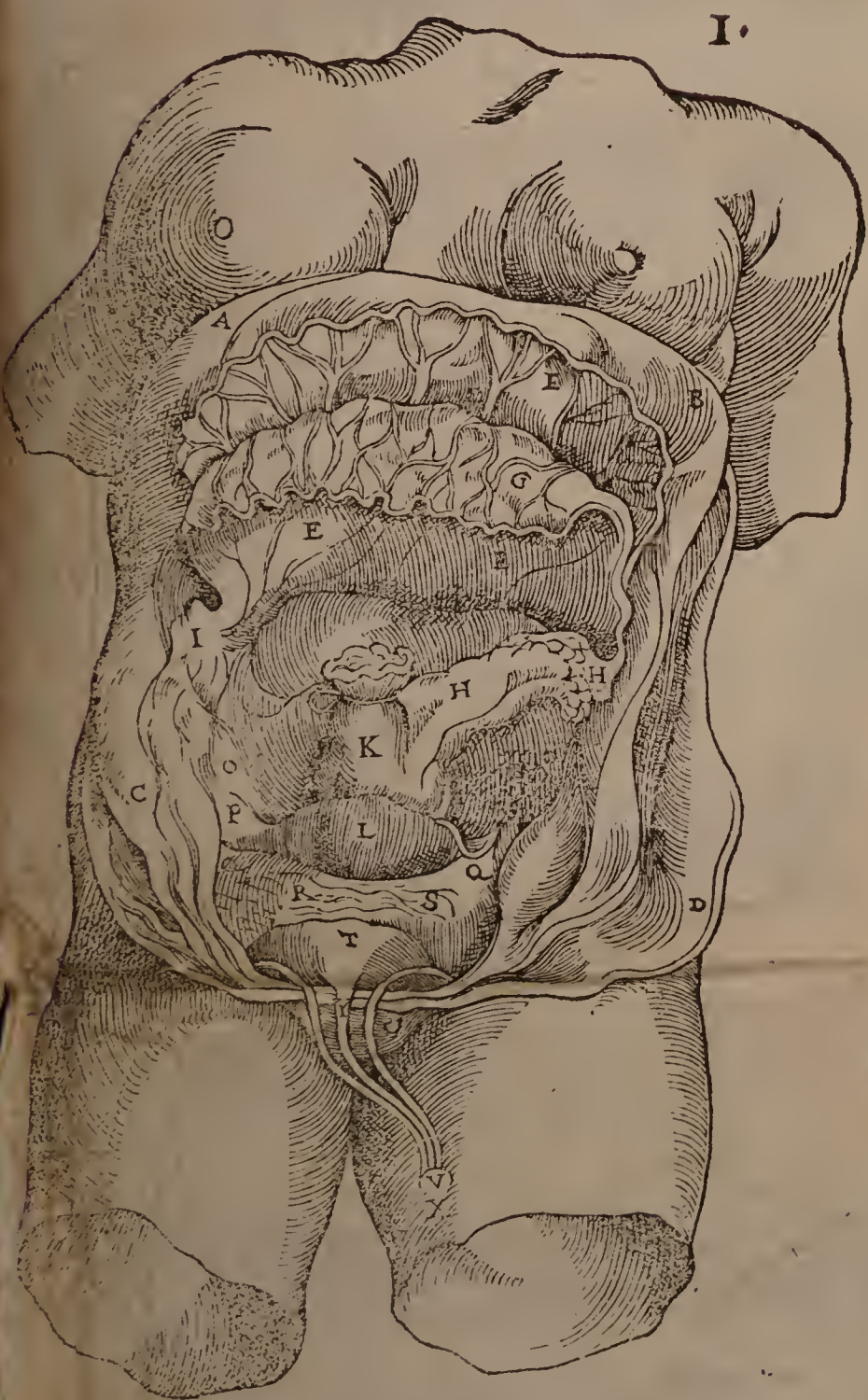
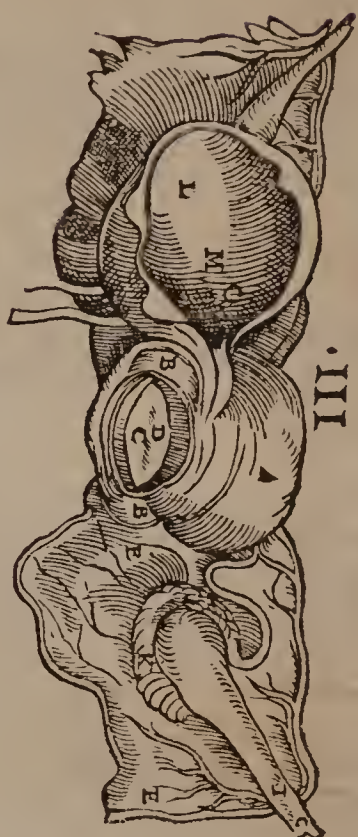
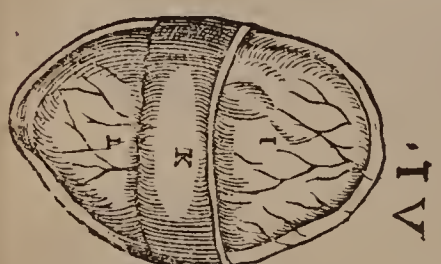
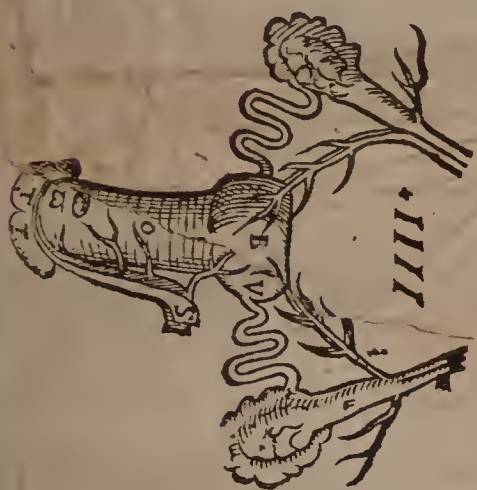
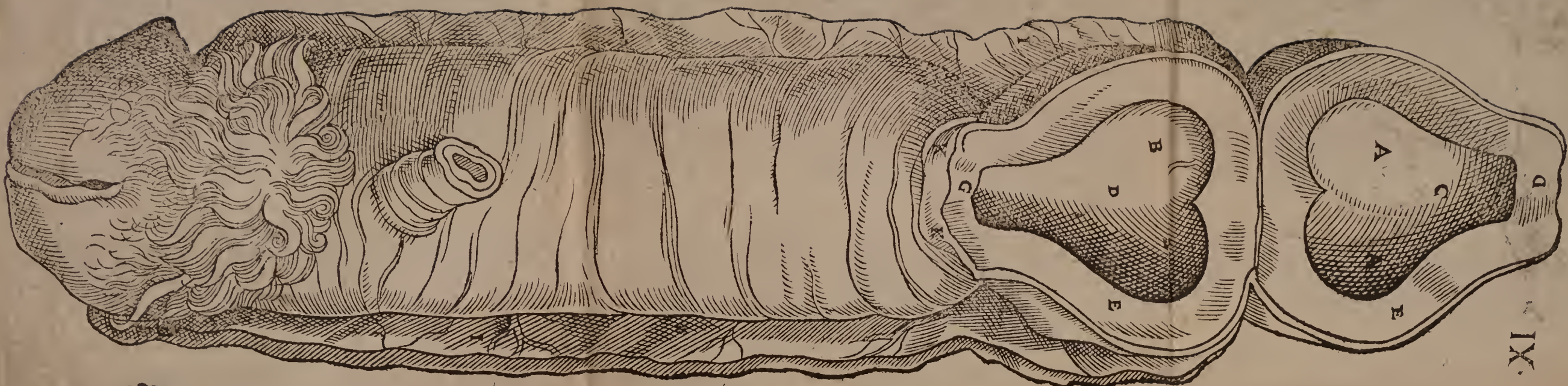
The first Booke.

The declaration by letters, of the figures following, wherein be set forth to the eye, every part in woman, mentioned in this booke before: Which in the former printings hath ben corrupted, but nowe truely set forth.

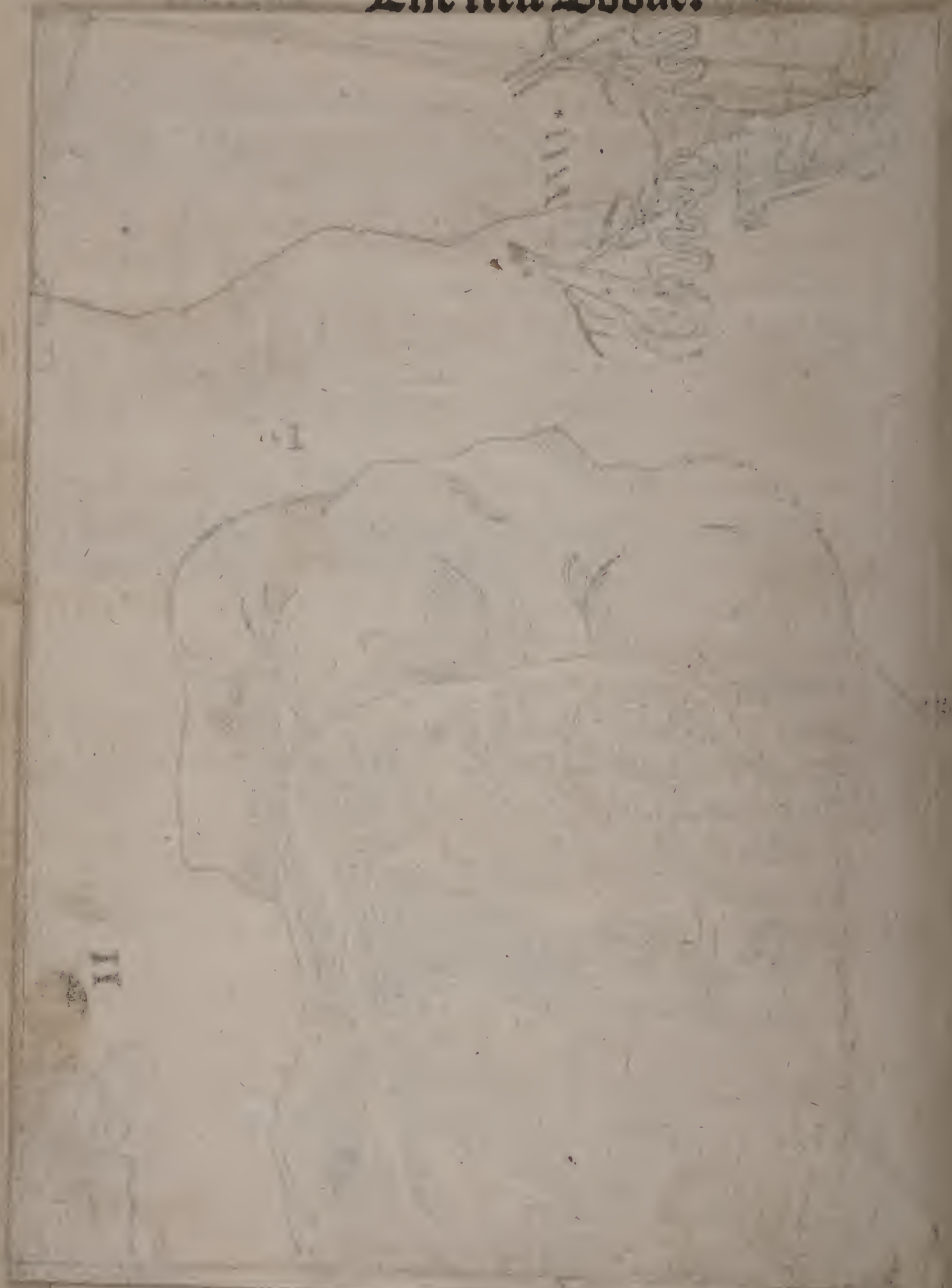
The fyrst figure of the partes of women, with the declaration and characters of the same.



In this fyrste fygure is set forth the tronke or stocke of a womans body, laide on the ground, whose *Peritonium* is opened with the Muskels of the Abdomen, and turned ouer towarde & inside, accordyng to the vse of cuttyng. and afterward we haue cut awaye all the bowelles or entrayles from *mesenterium*, the strayte entrayle beyng yet left in the bodye, with also the whole *Mesenterium*, whose pannicles we haue here somewhat taken awaye, and set a portion from the other, that the nature of *mesenterium* might come to light, but this present fygure is for this cause principally declared and set forth, that it myght so shewe the position of the Matrix or wombe, and the bladder, as in this woman it is seene, no part of the sayde Matrix or wombe beyng moued. For here is as yet no pannicle plukt away from the Matrix or wombe, but that all thynges are here yet whollye seene, lyke wyse as in women some



The first Booke.



here yet wholye tenes, the wylde up in some
some

Some what fat they do appeare to the cutter, the bowels beyng taken away. For women are so fatte, that when they be vexed and kylled with long sicknes, and become mosse leanest, then they shewe no kynde of proceffe of vessels, vnlesse the pannicles or thinne couerynges be seperated a sunder.

A.B.C.D. The inner face or part of the former seate of *Peritonium*.

EE A part of *Mesenterium*, knitting the thinne intrayles to the backe.

FF Here is noted another pannicle of *Mesenterium*, plucked from the other which we haue marked with *G* and *G*. But both the pannicles do shewe the order of the vessels of *Mesenterium*, and order of the karnelles put betwene the distributions of the vessels.

HH In this part of *Mesenterium*, the entrayle *Colon* was committed and set to, where it was nyest to the straitte gut.

I And in this part of *Mesenterium*, dyd consist and stande the beginning of the intrayle *Colon*, or his continuance with the thinne intrayles, and also the blynde gut.

K The strayte gutte beyng there cutte of where *Colon* dyd ende, whiche seate or place is ryght agaynst the place of the knitting together of the hockle bone with the lowest turnyng ioynte of the loynes.

L The former seate of the bottom of the *Matrix*, from whence is nothing perceyued pluct away.

M The right stone or testicle in a women.

N The

The first booke.

N The lefte stone of a woman, and the former part of this is here entierly seene, although there be of the ryght but a small portion perceyued, and it is for this cause, that we haue in such manner set forth the ryght stone, for both the testicles are couered with a pannicle, whiche pannicle bringeth downe the seede vessels of a woman, whiche do springe from *Peritonium*: but we haue vncouered the lefte testicle of that pannicle, with the hande onely without any knyfe, leauyng the ryght as you see. For this pannicle doth not growe to the former seate of the testicle in any part thereof, but lyeth there onely.

O A pannicle springing and growyng forth from the right seate of *Peritonium*, and committing the ryght testicle with the seede vessels on this side, and those vessels, whiche infolde the higher seate of the Matrix to the backe, contaynyng together the Matrix or wombe, and afterwarde with the pannicle of the other side, constituting the seconde cote of the Matrix.

P This way in the foresayde pannicle, runne forth fleshye fibres or thynne skynnes, constitutyng the ryghte Muskle of the Matrix or wombe.

Q With these characters, the pannicle of the left syde is noted, whiche is correspondent and lyke to that pannicle, whiche the foresayd **OO** did poynt to vs.

R The former part of the necke of the Matrix, couered as yet, betwene **R** and **s** with that cote whiche

whiche the partes of *Peritonium* offer vnto it, whiche bring forth vessels vnto it, and from it, and do knitte it to *Peritonium*: but the space beyng betwene *Kands* doth shewe the largenes of the necke of the *Matrix*. And the wrynkes which are seene here, are they whiche the necke of the *Matrix* falling into it selfe, not stretched forth agayne, doth shewe in the cutting.

¶ The bladder whose hinder part is here chiefly seene, for we haue so caste our eye in the declaration and setting forth of this figure, as though we woulde principally beholde in the body beyng prostrate and layde along, the hinder seate of the bladder, whiche loketh toward the *Matrix*.

For yf ye wyl suppose and ymagine this body of a woman, to be set vpryght as that whiche next foloweth, ye shoulde thinke otherwise then the thing is, that the bottome of the *Matrix* is set forth muche higher then the bladder.

¶ This is a portion of the nauell, deliuered in the cutting from *Peritonium*, and tourned ouer together with the vesselles seruyng properly to the chylde.

× A portion of a bayne goyng from the Nauell to the *Lyer*.

¶ A way goyng from the hyghest seate or place of the bottome of the bladder pertaynyng vnto the Nauell, and bringing from thence the brine of the childe, betwene his seconde and the innermost infolder.

Shewe

The first booke.

Let & Shewe two arteries creping forth hyther from the Hauell, by the sides of the bladder, and graft in or continued in this place, to the braunches of the great artyre, going principally to the holes of the bones aboue the priuie members.

¶ The declaration of the seconde figure of the members of women, and of the karacters of the same.



¶ We haue here taken away the skin from the right teate of this present figure, that the nature of the teates might as nigh as may be, be set before the eyes, and afterwarde we haue cut away the ventricle with the bowels, & also *Mesenteriana* and the splene, leauyng the strayte entrayle in this place vnmedled with, as well as we dyd in the figure before. And moreouer, we haue as it were, taken away from the vttermoste cote whiche *Peritonium* gaue vnto it, cuttyng away also all the pannicles, that the vesselles carryng forth the substauce and matter of seede to the stones, & also the vessels carryng away the seede from thence to the Matrix shoulde appeare and be seene. Also we haue tourned ouer the bladder downewarde on the lefte syde, lykewyse breaking

breakyng the way or conduite whiche beareth forth the brine to it from the ryght kydney, that the insertion of the wayes of bearyng forth the brine to the bladder myght appeare, and that the bladder should not let the inspection or sight of the Matrix or wombe. Last of all, we haue cutte away from this figure a portion of the bones aboue the priuie members, that the neckes of the matrix and of the bladder might the more commodiously be seene.

A A Waynes running forth oftentymes to the teates, from those wayes whiche are offered to the skinne, whiche is brought ouer the heyght of the shoulder.

B Waynes springing from those baynes whiche are led forth by the arme hole to the hande.

C The principall body of the teate.

D D Karnels and fatnesse sprede abrode euery where on the karnelly body, marked with **C**.

E F G H The hynder outsyde or insyde of the former seate of *Peritonium* outwarde. For the former region of *Peritonium* is here bowed vpwarde and downewarde towarde the syde.

I K Portions of Waynes and also Artires, creppng forth downewarde, vnder the brest bone from the throte.

L The gybolite or swellng seate of the lyuer.

M The holowe part of the lyuer is here also somewhat seene.

N A small portion or peece of the wayne goyng from the Nauell to the Liuer.

O The stocke of *Vena porta* is here cut away, with
A I the

The first booke.

the vessels brought vnto it.

P The holowe bayne.

Q The great Artyze.

R The rootes of the Artyzes goyng to the ventricule, the lyuer, the splene, the caule, and to the bowelles.

S The beginning of a bayne infoldyng the fat coate of the left kydney.

T The bayne and Artyze whiche bryngeth the whayishe humour to the ryght kydney.

V The bayne and Artyze whiche bringeth the wayishe humour to the left kydney.

X The begynnyng of a bayne goyng into the fatte coate of the ryght kydney.

Y The former seate of the ryght kydney.

Z The former seate of the left kydney.

a a The way that bryngeth the brine from the ryght kydney, into the bladder, but at the nethermour, **a** is broken away, but the portion that is left of this way, and is continued to the bladder marked with **b**.

b The way that carryeth forth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder.

cc The way that carryeth forth the brine from the left kydney into the bladder.

d d The ryght seede bayne, whose begynnyng the hygher **d** doth shewe.

e The seede bayne goyng to the left testicle.

f The springing forth of the Artires of seede.

g The ryght seede Artire.

h The left seede Artire.

ikl The former part of the bottome of the Matrix,

trix, and i sheweth the right blunte angle or corner of the sayde bottome, where k sheweth the left, but l sheweth the region or place of the Matrix, where the mouth of his bottom consisteth, and where his necke beginneth.

m This is the strayte gut. And that I may the lesse burden both the sydes of this figure with many letters, I wyll at this present affixe the Characters but on the one side only.

n A portion of the Uayne and Artyre of seede, whiche do go to the vpper seate of the bottome of the wombe.

o Portions of the Waynes and Artyre of seede goyng to the testicle, and there ioynyng and goyng together, and constituting.

p A body lyke the spire of a steple, and this letter p doth poynt vs the roote or foundation of this body, whereas the saide roote or foundation is committed and ioyned to the testicle.

q From that saide body such vessels runne forth into the tunicles, committing and ioynyng the testicle to *Peritonium*.

r The former face or part of the testicle.

s The begynnyng of the vessell whiche beareth forth the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

t The bowyng and turnynges ouer agayne of the vessell which beareth forth the seede, whiche turnynges the sayde vessell maketh rounde about the sydes of the testicle.

u The goyng forth of the vessell whiche carryeth forth the seede of the Matrix.

The first booke.

xx The necke of the Matrix.

y Vessels foldyng in the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix or wombe, and the necke also of the same.

z A bayne commyng from those vessels to the bladder, which vessels do folde and wynde in the necke of the Matrix, and this Karakter also noteth the insertion of the wayes of the vrine.

uβ The hynder seate of the bottome of the bladder.

r The Muskle of the necke of the bladder.

δ In this seate the necke of the bladder is implanted into the necke of the Matrix.

e Small skinnie portions of fleshe of the necke of the mouth or opening of the wombe or Matrix, and the small hyllockes of the Matrix, with the mouth or openyng of the necke thereof, nede here no speciall declaration with Characters.

γ The roote of the Artire, goyng into the lowest part of *Mesenterium*.

α Vessels which do ascende and rise bpwarde to the Muskles of the *Abdomen*, from the Vaines and Artires whiche do go into the legge.

¶ The declaration of the Characters of the thirde figure of women.



This present figure sheweth the Matrix or wombe, with the thinne couerynges whiche do bynde it to *Peritonium*, cut forth from the body, and the

The first booke. Fol. xlviij.

the necke therof is here so folded together, and turned ouer, that the mouth or openyng of the bottome of the Matrix doth here manyfestlye shewe it selfe. And we haue lyke wyle so opened the bottome and the necke of the bladder, that the holownes of the same, with the insertion of the wayes of brine, are here manyfestlye sene.

A The former face of the bottome of the Matrix, beyng not yet vncouered of any pannicle.

B B The necke of the Matrix.

C A parte of the bottome of the Matrix, swelling foorth into the vpper seate of the necke of the Matrix, in maner of a karnell.

D The mouth of the bottome of the Matrix.

EE A pannicle knittyng the Matrix to *Peritonium*, and conteynyng his vesselles.

F The left testicle of the Matrix.

G The bayne and artire of seede.

H Portion of the seede bayne and artire, commynge to the vpper seate of the bottome of the Matrix.

I A portion of the seede bayne and Artire commynge to the testicle.

K The vessell carryng the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

L The holownes of the bladder.

M The insertion of the wayes of the brine.

N Here hangeth foorth a lyttle peece of the wayes of the brine.

The first Booke.

The declaration of the Characters of the fourth Table of Women.

S All branches running forth into the pannicle where they are committed and ioyned to *Peritonium*.

A portion of the Wayne and Artyre goyng into the testicle, falling to the vpper seat of the bottome of the Matrix.

μ The commixtion and goyng together of the seede bayne and artyre, that is lyke the spire of a steple, which we lyken to the braded baynes called *Varices*.

λ The left testycle.

μ μ The vessell carryng forth the seede from the testycle into the Matrix.

v The blunte angle or corner of the bottome of the Matrix, in whom the vessell that bryngeth forth the seede attempteth his insertion.

z In this seate the bottome of the Matrix is ended into the necke therof, and in this region or place is the begynnynge of the mouth or opening place therof.

o v The necke of the Matrix or wombe.

c Here the necke of the blader is brought forth into the necke of the Matrix, and there endeth.

s Those are vessels infolding the nether seate of the bottome of the Matrix, and also his necke.

τ τ The swellng bymmes at the mouth of the necke of the Matrix.

The

vv The wayes that brynge the brine from the raynes in the bladder.

The declaration of the Characters of the. b. bl. vii. and. viii. figures.



We haue now deuided this fyfth table of the wombe or Matrix, conteynyng a male chylde, on the former syde, with a long section or cut, and another whiche are ouer-tywart styte, remo-uyng and takyng a- waye into the sydes,

partes of the coates of the bottome of the Matrix, yea, euen from the vttermost infolder of the chylde.

abcd The inner syde of the sayde infolder of the Matrix, whiche before the section was brought about and couered with the infolders of the chylde.

EE The vtter syde of the Matrix, and the hygher E noteth the top or the ryght angle or corner of the Matrix, brought forth bpwarde and toward the ryght syde, more then toward the left, because it is a man chylde which is in þ wombe.

F The fyfte or the vttermost infolder of the chylde.

GG The seconde infolder of the chylde is here

The first Booke.

also a great part sene.

H A part of the necke of the Matrix, to whom in the other syde we haue left growyng to it a bayne and an Artire, which is princypally distributed into the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix.

I Here is also yet left the ryght testicle, that the situacion of it myght be sene and perceaued in women beyng with chylde.

The syrte Table sheweth the infolders of the chylde, taken whole away from the Matrix, and not broken.

R **H** E vttermoste infolder of the chylde.

L **L** The secōd infolder of the chylde which forsomuch as it is transparent in maner of a pannicle, it suffereth the chylde, be wrapt within this thirde infolder, in it somewhat to be sene.

In the seuenth table we haue deuided the vtter and the second infolder of the chylde, with a longe section or cutte, and we haue here expressed and shewed forth both the sayde infolders, taken away from the thirde infolder, and the thyrde infolder also yet whole.

M **M** The thyrde or the inmoste infolder of the chylde, whiche because it is so thinne that one may easely see through it, the fourme of the chylde lying therein, somewhat sheweth hym selfe to the eyes.

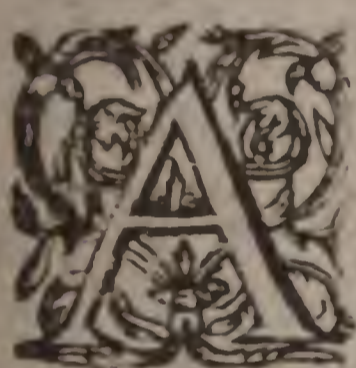
N The

N The proceadyng or order of Waynes and Ar-
tures, goyng to the Nauyll from the first infol-
der of the chylde.

O P O P The seconde infolder of the chylde.

And **O O** shewe his insyde, where **P P** sheweth
his vtter syde.

Q R The fyrste infolder of the chylde, where **Q**
noteth the outsyde, and **R** the insyde, but the
proceadyng and order of the vesselles by the se-
conde and the thyrde infolder are perfectly
known, without any helpe of Characters.



A D the eyght Table expresseth the
chylde delyuered from all his coates,
and so it sheweth hym lying, by the
wonderfull prouidence of nature,
not as the common opinion of the
bulger sorte of wyters affirmeth, but as you
may here se in these figures, & so doth it lye in
the middelt of the wombe. For it is most vnttrue
that the chylde doth lye in the wombe rounde,
lyke as it were bowed, so that the knees should
touche to the face, but as he is set here in the
viii. figure. And obseruyng this true situacion
of hym, you shall fynd commonly none other si-
tuacion of the chylde, nor ioynyng of any ioynt
of hym therin, then is here expressed.

But in this figure **M M N O P O P Q & R** do
note the same as in the seventh Table, saue
that **M & M** do shewe the insyde, or inner parte
of the thyrde infolder. But **s** sheweth here pri-
uately the goyng forth of the vesselles of the
Nauyll

The first Booke.

Maupll, which is betwene the Maupll and the ioyning together of the vessels with the thirde infolder, which is also brought forth with a greate space betwene the shewyng, where bee certayne (as it were) knottes or swellynge, accordynge to the numbre of the whiche knottes more or lesse, Mydwyues folowhelye do prophesie eyther many or fewe chylzen to the woman, which of the learned men is taken but for a very fantasie, and worthy of reprehention. And moreouer when the chylde cometh forth (as it chaunseth sometymes) hauynge that about his necke, they saye that it is the same chylde's destenye to be hanged, with many other foolyshe conceytes, rather to be laughed at, then to be beleued.

The declaration of the Characters of the nyynth figure of women.



In the nyynth figure sheweth the Matrix cut forth of the bodye, being of that bygnesse as it was seene taken forth of a woman at the laste Anothomye, which I did se at the vniuersitie of Padua in Italy. And moreouer we haue so deuyded and cutte asunder the bottome of the Matrix by the myddle, that the concauitie and hollowe bought within the same myght be perceaued, and the thicke substaunce also of both the coates of the Matrix in women, when they

they be not with chylde.

ASS The concauitie and holowe bought of the bottome of the Matrix.

CD A line somewhat after the maner of a seame called in Latyn *Scortum*, whiche doth belonge to the place wherein the testycle doth lye, whiche swelleth somewhat forth into the bought of the bottome of the Matrix.

ES The thickestnes of the inner and proper coate of the bottome of the Matrix.

FF A portion of the innermoze bottome of the Matrix, swelling forth downward from the hygher scate of the Matrix, into the holownes and bought of the bottome.

GG The beginnyng of the necke or the opening place of the bottome of the Matrix.

HH The seconde or vttermoze infolder of the bottome of the Matrix, descended frō *Peritonium*.

II Here we haue reserued a portion on both the sydes of the thinne couerynges, descended from *Peritonium*, and conteynyng the Matrix.

K Here is also sene the substance of the necke of the Matrix, because the cuttyng wherwith we deuyded the bottome of the Matrix, was begunne at this place.

L A part of the necke of the bladder, implanted into the necke of the Matrix, castynge forth into it the brine. The swelling partes of *Abdomen* and whatsoeuer is els to be considered thereof, they may be sufficiently knowen without direction of Characters.

FINIS.

The second Booke.

Of the tyme of byrth. And which is called
naturall or vnnaturall.

Cap. i.



In the first Booke We haue
sufficientlye set forth and
described the maner, situa-
tion, & forme of the Ma-
trix wherein man is con-
ceaued, With diuers other matters ap-
pendyng and concernyng the better vn-
derstandyng of the same. And now
here in this seconde Booke We wyl de-
clare the maner of the quytynge and de-
liueraunce of the Infant out of the mo-
thers wombe, With other thinges ther-
to appertaynyng. And first here in this
Chapter We wyl declare the tokens and
signes whereby ye may perceiue whe-
ther the tyme of labour be neare or not:
For when the houre of labour appro-
cheth neare, these signes folowing euer-
more procede and come before.

First certayne dolours and paines be-
gyn to growe about the guttes, the na-
uyll, and in the raynes of the backe, and
lyke

Tokens to
know when
the tyme of
delyueraunce
is nere.

lyke wyse about the thighes, and the other places beyng neare to the priuie partes, which lyke wyse then beginneth to swell and to burne, and to expell humours, so that it geueth a playne & euident token that the labour is nere.

But ye shall note that there is two maner of byrthes, the one called naturall, the other not naturall. Naturall byrth is, when the chylde is borne both in due season, and also in due fashion.

The due season is most commonly after the ninth moneth, or about fortie wekes after the conception, although some be deliuered sometimes in the seuenth moneth, and the chylde proueth very well. But such as are borne in the eyght moneth, other they be dead before the birth or els liue not long after.

The due fashion of birth is this: first the head commeth forwarde, then followeth the necke & shoulders, the armes with the handes lying close to the body toward the feete, the face and forepart of the chylde, beyng towardes the face
and

Two sortes
of deliue-
raunce.

B. T. L. L. L.

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

deliuerance

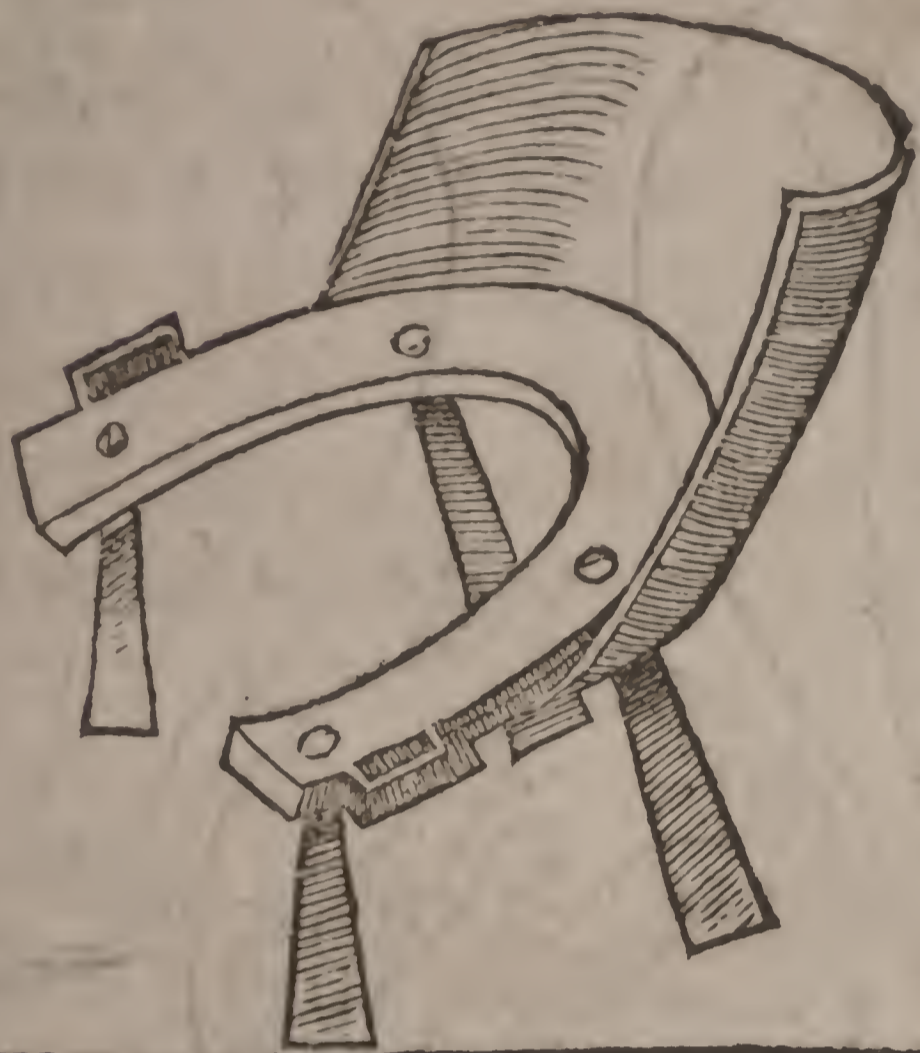
and forepart of the mother, as it appeareth in the fyrst of the byrth figures. For as hath ben sayde already in the fyrst booke, before the tyme of deliuerance, the chylde lyeth in the mothers wombe the head vpward, and the feete downward, but when it shoulde be deliuered, it is turned cleane contrary, the head downward, the feete vpward, and the face towardes the mothers belly, and that yf the byrth be naturall. Another thyng also is this, that yf the byrth be naturall, the deliuerance is easie without long taryng or looking for it.

Of byrth
not naturall.

The byrth not naturall is, when the mother is deliuered before her tyme, or out of due season, or after any other fashion then is here spoken of before: As when both the legges proceade first, or one alone, with both the handes vp, or both downe, other els the one vp and the other downe, and diuers otherwise, as shalbe hereafter moze clearely declared.

Of

THE BIRTH FYGVRES
THE WOMANS STOOLE
THE



II



I



THE BYRTHE

III



III



V



VI



VII



· FIGVRES ·

IX

VIII



X



XI



XII



THE BYRTHE FYGVRES
XIII



XV



XVI



XVII



Of easie and breasie, difficult, or dolou-
rous deliuerance, and the causes of it:

With the signes howe to knowe
and foze see the same.

Capit. lii.



Very many be the perilles,
daungers and thronges,
which chaunce to women
in theyr labour, whiche al-
so ensue and come in diuers
wayes, and for dyuers causes, suche as
I shall here declare.

Many perils
chauncing to
women in
their labour.

First when the woman that labou-
reth is conceyued ouer yonge, as before
xii. or. xv. yeres of age. (whiche chaun-
seth sometyme, though not very often)
and that the passage be ouer anguste,
streate, or narrowe, other naturally, or
els for some disease and infirmitie, whi-
che may happen about that part, as
apostumes, pulshes, pyles, or blysters,
and such other. Through the whiche
causes, nature can not (but with great
dolour and payne) open and dilate it
selfe, to the expelling and deliuerance
of

The seconde booke.

of the chyld. And sometime the vesike
oz bladder, oz other intrayles beyng a-
bout the Matrix oz Wombe, be also a-
postumate and blystered, whiche being
greeued, the Matrix oz Wombe likewise
for vicinitie and neighbourhead is gre-
ued with them, & that hindereth great-
lye the deliuerance. Also sometime in
the fundement are hemorhodes oz pil-
les and other pushes, chappynge oz
chynes, whiche cause great payne. Also
hardnesse and difficultie oz byndyng of
the belly, which thinges for the grieve
and payne that ensueth of them, cau-
seth the woman to haue little power to
helpe her selfe in her labour.

Furthermore, yf the partie be weake
and of feble complexion, oz of nature ve-
ry colde, oz to yonge, oz very aged, oz ex-
ceedyng grosse and fatte, oz contrary-
wise, too spare and leane, oz that she ne-
uer had childe before, oz that she be ouer-
timorous and fearefull, dyuers, way-
warde, oz such one that wyll not be ru-
led, remouyng her selfe from one place
to

to another, all suche thynges causeth the labour to be muche more paynefull, cruell and dolorous, then it woulde otherwise be. Also ye muste vnderstande that generally the byrth of the man is easier then the byrth of the female.

*conting
accordin
to nature*

Item, yf the chylde be of a fuller and greater growth, then that it may easily passe that narrow passage, or contrarywise, if it be so faynt, weake and tender, that it cannot turne it selfe, or doth it very slowly, or yf the woman haue two chyl dren at once, other els that it with the whiche she laboureth, be a monster, as for example, yf it hath but one body & two heades, as appeareth in the .xvii. of the birth figures, such as of late was seene in the dominion of Werdenbergh.

Agayne, when it proceadeth not in due tyme, or after due fashion, as when it commeth forth with both feete or both knees together, or els with one foote onely, or with both feete downe wardes, and both handes vpwardes, other els (the whiche is most perillous)

R |

sidelong,

|| Sidelong, arselong, or backlong, other
els (having two at a byrth) both pro-
ceade with theyr feete fyrst, or one with
his feete, and the other with his head,
by thole and dyuers other wayes the
woman sustayneth great dolour, paine,
and anguyshe.

Item, yf the woman suffer aborti-
ment, that is to saye, byrnyng forth her
chylde in the .iiii. or .v. moneth after the
conception, whiche is before the due
tyme, in this case it shalbe great payne
to her, for so muche as in that tyme, the
porte of the wombe is so firmly and
strongly enclosed, that vnneth the point
of a needle may enter in at it.

Also if the childe be dead in the Mothers
belly, it is a very perillous thing, for so
much as it cannot be easely turned, ney-
ther can it welde or helpe it selfe to come
forth, or if the childe be sicke or weakened
so that it canot for feblenes helpe it self.

To knowe
whether the
chylde be
dead in the
mothers bel-
lye.

The which thing may be foresene and
knownen by these tokens: If the woman
with chylde haue ben long sicke before
her

her labour, if she haue ben soze lasked, if
after her conception she haue had dayly
and vnwoutly her flowres, yf straight
after one moneth vpon the conception,
her brestes yelde any milke, if the childe
stirre not ne moue at suche tyme as is
conuenient for it, these be argumentes
and tokens that it shuld be very weake.
By what tokens ye shall knowe it is
dead, I shall shewe you hereafter.

Also there is great peril in labouring,
when the secondine or latter birth is o-
uer fyne or stronge, and will not soone
riue or breake a sunder, so that the childe
may haue his easie coming forth. And
contrarywyle, when it is ouer weake,
slender or thin, so that it breaketh a sun-
der before that the chylde be turned, or
apt to issue forth, for then the humours
whiche are collect & gathered together,
about this secondine or seconde byrth,
passe away soner then they shoulde do,
& the birth shal lack his due humidities
and moistures, which shuld cause it the
easelyer to proceade, & with lesse payne.

Perill in the
secondine.

The seconde booke.

Excesse of
heate or cold
greatlye
hyndereth
the labour.

The byrth also is hyndered by ouer-
much colde, or ouermuche heate, for in
ouermuche colde, the passage and all o-
ther powers of the labouring woman,
be coarcted and made narrower then
they woulde otherwyle be. Likewise
ouer much heate debiliteth, weakeneth
and faynteth both the woman and the
chylde, so that neyther of them in that
case, can wel welde or helpe them selues
for fayntnes.

And farther if the woman haue vsed
to eate comonly such meate or frutes
which do exiccate or dry, and constraine
or bynde, as Medlars, Chestnuts, and
all sowre frutes, as Crabbes, Choke-
peres, Quinces, and suche other, with
ouer much vse of Tergeus, and suche
lyke sowre sauces, with Rife, Mill, and
many other thinges, al this shall great-
lye hinder the byrth.

Also the vse of colde bathes after the
fifth moneth folowing the conception,
or to bathe in such water where Alome
is, Iron, or Salt, or any suche thynges
which

Whiche do coarcte and constraune, or yf she haue ben oftentymes heauye and mournyng, or yll at ease, or yf she haue ben kepte ouer hungry and thurstie, or haue vled ouer much watche and wal- kyng, epyther if she vled a litle before her labour thynges of great odour, sinell or sauour, for suche thynges (in many mens opinions) attract and drawe by- ward the Mother or Matrix, the which is great hynderaunce to the byrth.

Also yf the woman feele payne only in the backe and aboue the nauell, and not vnder, it is a signe of harde labour, lyke wise if she were wont in times pas- sed to be deliuered with great payne, is an euidence and lykelyhod of great la- bour alwayes in the birth.

Nowe signes and tokens of an expe- dite and easy deliuerance, be such as be contrary to all those that haue ben rehearsed before. As for example, when the woman hath ben wont in tymes passed, easly to be deliuered, and that in her labour she feele but litle thronng

Tokens of
easy deliue-
raunce.

or dolour, or though she haue great paynes, yet they remayne not styll in the vpper partes, but descende alwayes downewardes to the nether partes or bottome of the belly.

And to be short, in all paynefull and troublesome labours, these signes betoken and signifie good speede and lucke in the labour: vnquietnes, much stirring of the chylde in the mothers belly, all the thronges and paynes tomblyng in the forepart of the bottome of the belly, the woman strong and myghtie of nature, such as can wel and strongly helpe her selfe to the deliuerance of the birth. And againe, euyl signes be those, when she sweateth colde sweate, and that her pulces beate and labour ouer soze, and that she her selfe in the labouring faint and sowne, these be vnluckie and mortall signes.

Cholwe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe,
and what remedies be for them
that haue harde labour.

Capit. iii.

Fo succoure and helpe them that are in such difficult peryl of labour, as we haue spoken of before, ye must obserue, kepe and marke those thinges that we shall (by the grace of God) shewe you in this Chapter folowynge.

First the woman with chylde muste kepe two diets, the one a moneth before her labour, the other in the very labouring. And aboue al thinges she must exchue & forbear al such occasions which may hynder the birth, to the vttermost of her power, the whiche occasions we rehearsed in the Chapter before. But if there be any such thyng which cannot be auoyded, forsomuch as it cometh by nature, or by long continuance and custome in this case: yet ye shal vse some suche remedies, the whiche may somewhat asswage it, mollifie it, or make it more easy or tollerable, so that it hinder the birth so much the lesse.

But if it so be, that any infirmitie or disease, swelling, or other apostumatio

Howe the labour may be made more easy.

The second Booke.

chance about the Mother or the priuie part, or about the vesike or bladder, as the stone, the strangury, and suche lyke, the whiche thynge maye cause suche straytnes and coarctation, that vnneth without great and horrible payne, the partie can be deliuered or discharged.

In these cases it behoueth such thinges to be looked vnto and cured, before the tyme of labour commeth, by the aduice of some expert Surgion.

Also yf the woman be ouermuch constipat or bounde, most commonly she must vse the moneth before her labour suche thynge the which may lenifie, mollifie, dissolue, and lose the belly, as apples fryed with suger, taken fastyng in the mornyng, and after that a draught of pure wyne alone, or els tempred with the iuyce of swete and very ripe apples.

Also to eat fygges in the mornyng fastyng, and at nyght, loseth well the bellye. If these profite not, *Cassia fistula* taken iii. or. iiii. drams one halfe houre before dyner, shal lose the belly without peryl.

Agayne

Agayne, in this case she must refraine from all such thinges as do harden, re-
strayne, and constipat, as meates broy-
led or roasted, and ryce, hard egges, biefe,
chestnutttes, and all sowre frutes, and
such lyke.

Also yf farther necessitie require, she
may receaue a clyster, but it must be ve-
ry gentle and easye, made of a pynt of
the broth of a chickin or other tender
fleshe, thereto puttyng so muche course
suger or hony, as may make it reasona-
bly sweete, & halfe a sponefull of whyte
salt. Or for the pooze woman maye be
made a clyster of a pynt of water, wher-
in hath ben sod mallowes or holpoke,
with hony and salt, as before. She may
vse also some other easy and temperate
purgation, to mollifie & lose her with-
all, as Mercury sodden with flesch in po-
tage, and diuers such other, or els a sup-
positer tempered with sope, larde, or the
yolkes of egges.

And yf it chaunce that (the labour
drawing neare) she waxe faynt or sicke-
lye,

Thynge to
lose the belly.

Wherewith
to comfozte
the woman
in her labour

The second Booke.

Iye, then must ye comfort her with good comfortable meate, drinke, holosome and noble electuaries, and in this time must she do all such thynges the whiche can make her apte and sufficient to her labour, and to vse such things the which may laxe, open, and mollifie the nature and passage, so that the byrth may the more frely proceade, and that chiefly in the yonger women. The elder women, for because that those partes in them be somewhat dryer and harder, therefore they must vse hoat and moyst thynges, which haue propertie to lenifie and souple, and that both in meate and drynke, and also in outward fomentations, bathynges, suppositoies, and annoyntmentes.

Annoyntmentes
to souple.

Annoyntmentes wherewith ye maye souple the priuie place, be these. Hennes grece, Duckes grece, Goose grece, also oyle Oliue, Lineseede oyle, or oyle of fenegreke, or the viscosite of holpocke, and such other, & for drynke, let her vse good rype wine mixed with water, also there

there muste be a consideration in the dieting of the woman, that she maye vse such thynges the which may moysten her, and not make her fatte. Contrarywise, let her auoyde such thynges the whiche shoulde exicate, drye, constrain, or coarct her, and that all the moneth before her labour. But about ten dayes before the tyme (yf she feele anye payne or grieffe) lette her vse euery day to washe or bathe her with warme water, in the which also that she tarpe not ouerlong in bathyng for weakning of her, and therein let her stande, so that the water come aboue the nauyll a little, and also seathe in the water Malloes, Holvoke, Camomell, Mercurie, Maydenheyre, Lyneseede, Fenegreke seede, and suche other thynges whiche haue vertue to mollifie and sofle. And yf it be so, that for weakenesse of the body she may not endure this bathyng in warme water, then with a spounge or other cloth dppped in the foresayde bath, let her sokyngly washe her feete, her

Bathes to
lose and gen-
tlyly to open
the body.

The second Booke.

her thyghes, and her priuie partes, the
whiche thynges shall greatly profite to
her. But in suche tyme beware ye come
not in the common hot houses, for they
would cause you to be feeble and faynt,
which were yll in this case.

Annointme-
tes to soyle.

And when ye are thus bathed or wa-
shed, then shall it be very conuenient for
you to annoynt with the foresayde gre-
ces and oyles, your backe, belly, nauyll,
sydes, and suche places as are neare to
the priuie partes. Furthermore, it shal-
be greatlye profitable for her to conuey
inwarde into the priuie part these fore-
said oyles or greces with a sponge, or o-
ther thyng made for the purpose, she ly-
ing vpryght, the myddes of her bodye
most hyst, so that it maye the better re-
mayne within her, and that chieflye yf
the Matrix be drie, other els the partie
very leane and spare.

Sweete
sumes.

It shalbe also very profitable for her to
suffume the nether places with Muske,
Ambre, Gallia Muscata, which put on
embres, yelde a goodlye sauour, by the
which

Whiche the neather places open them-
selfe, and drawe downeward.

Also as I sayde before, she must take
good hede to her diet, that she take thin-
ges the which may comfort and streng-
then the body, feeding not ouer much of
any thing, and to drinke pleasaunt and
well sauering wine, or other drinke, also
moderatly to exercise the body in doing
some thyng, styring, mouyng, goyng,
or standyng, more then otherwyle she
was wont to do, these thinges farther
the byrth and make it the easier, and
this is the maner of diet the which we
aduise the woman to kepe the moneth
before her labour or longer.

Another dyet there is, the which she
ought to obserue in the tyme of labour,
when the stormes and thronges begyn
to come on, and the humours which yet
hitherto haue remained about the Ma-
trix or Mother collected, nowe beginne
to flowe forth, and this maner of dyet
consisteth in two sortes. First that such

which

What is to
be done whe
the time of la-
bour is come

The seconde booke.

Whiche may cause the byrth or labour to be very easie. Secondly, to withstand, defende and to put away so neare as may be the instant and present dolours. And as touchyng this poynt, it shalbe very profitable for her, for the space of an houre to sit still, then (rising againe) to go vp and downe a payre of stayres, cryyng or reachyng so loude as she can, so to styre her selfe.

And also it shalbe very good for a tyme, to retayne and kepe in her breath, for because that thoroowe that meanes the guttes and intrayles be thrust together and depressed downewarde. Also it shalbe very good to receyue some medicine to prouoke the byrth, of the whiche we wyll speake more hereafter.

Nowe when the woman perceyueth the Matrix or Mother to waxe laxe or loose, and to be dissolued, and that the humours yssue forth in great plentie, then shal it be meete for her to sit downe leanyng backward in maner vpright.

Of the Mid-
wyfes Schoole.

For the which purpose in some regions
(as

(as in Fraunce and Germany) the Midwifes haue stoles for the nonce, whiche beyng but lowe, and not hyc from the grounde, be made so compassewise and cane or holowe in the middes, that that may be receyued from vnderneath whiche is looked for, and the backe of the stole leanyng backwarde, receyuethe the backe of the woman, the fashion of the whiche stoole, is set in the beginning of the byrth figures hereafter.

And when the tyme of labour is come, in the same stoole ought to be put many clothes or cloutes in the backe of it, the which the Midwife may remoue from one side to another accordyng as necessitie shall require. The Midwife her selfe shall sit before the labouryng woman, and shall diligentlly obserue and wayte, howe much, and after what meanes the chylde styreth it selfe, also shall with her, handes fyrst annoyned with the Oyle of Almondes, or the Oyle of whyte Lillies, rule and direct euery thyng as shall seeme best.

Also

The seconde booke.

The Mid-
wyfe must
geue comfort
table wordes
to the partie
trauelling.

Also the Midwyfe muste enstruct and comfort the partie, not onely refreshing her with good meate and drinke, but also with sweete wordes, geuyng her good hope of a speedefull deliuerance, encouraging and enstomakyng her to patience and tollerance, byddyng her to holde in her breath so muche as she may, also strekyng gentilly with her handes her belly aboue the Nauell, for that helpeth to depresse the byrth downewarde.

But and if the woman be any thing grosse, fat, or fleshy, it shalbe best for her to lie groueling, for by that meanes the Matrix is thrust and depressed downewarde, annointing also the priuie partes with the oyle of white Lillies. And yf necessitie require it, let not the Midwyfe be afrayde ne ashamed to handle the places, and to relaxe and loose the straighthes, (for so muche as shall lye in her) for that shal helpe well to the more expedite and quicke labour.

But this muste the Midwife aboue
all

all thinges take heede of that she com-
pel not the woman to labour before the
byrth come forward, and she we it selfe.
For before that tyme, all labour is in
vayne, labour as much as ye liste. And
in this case many times it commeth to
passe, that the partie hath laboured so
soze before the time, that when she shuld
labour in deede, her might and strenght
is spente before in vayne, so that she is
not now able to helpe her selfe, and that
is a perillous case.

Furthermore when the Secondine
or seconde byrth (in the which the byrth
is wrapped and conteyned) doth once
appare, then maye ye knowe that the
labour is at hand, wherfore if the same
secondine breake not of his owne kinde,
it shalbe the Midwyfes part and office,
with her nayles easely and gentelly to
breake and rent it, or yf that maye not
conueniently be done, then rayse vp be-
twene your fingers a peece of it, and cut
it of with a payre of sheeres, or sharpe
knyfe, but so that ye hurt not the byrth

L i

With

*1st before the
2nd stop.*

To labour
much before
the due time
doth but fee-
ble the wo-
man, and no
thing profit.

The seconde booke.

With the cut. This done, by and by ensueth consequently the flux and flowe of humours, of the whiche I spake before, and then next foloweth immediatlye the byrth.

But yf it so chaunce that the Secundine should be cut by the Midwyfe, and all the watery part issued and spent before due tyme & necessitie should require it, so that the priuie passage be lefte exicate and dry, the byrth not yet appearing, and by this meanes the labour shoulde be hyndered and letted. In this case ye shall annoynt and mollifie that priuie passage with the oyle of whyte Lillies, or some of the greses spoken of before, fyrst warmed, and so conueyed into the priuie partes, the whiche thinges wyll cause the way to be slippery, souple, and easie for the byrth to passe. But chiefly in these difficulties, should profite, the whyte of an egge together with the yolke powred into the same place, whiche should cause it to be most slipperye and slydyng, and supplie the rowme

12

Only supplie
of Membranes
a cause of
delay

Made for
Substing Membranes
when fruits are
dry from
Only supplie of
Membranes

rowne of the naturall humidities spent before.

And yf it be so, that the byrth be of a great growth, and the head sticke in the comynng forth, then muste the Mydwyfe helpe all that she may, with her hande fyrst annoynted with some oyle, openyng and enlargyng the way, that the yssue may be the freer. Likewise must be done yf she beare two chyldeen at once. And all this is spoken of the naturall byrth, when that fyrst procedeth the head, and then the rest of the body ordynately, as ye may see in the fyrst of the byrth figures folowynge.

But when the byrth commeth not naturally, then must the Mydwyfe do all her diligence and payne (if it may be possible) to turne the byrth tenderlye with her annoynted handes, so that it may be reduced agayne to a naturall byrth. As for example: Sometyme it chaūseth the chylde to come the legges & both armes & handes downeward, close to the sydes fyrst forth, as appeareth

The head
procedyng
fyrst.

The legges
& both handes
downe, pro-
cedyng first.

in the seconde of the byrth figures. In this case the Midwyfe must do all her payne with tender handling and annoynting to receyue forth the chylde, the legges being still close together, and the handes likewise remayning, as appeareth in the sayde seconde figure. Howbeit, it were farre better (if it may be done by any possible wayes or meanes) that the Midwyfe shoulde turne these legges commyng fyrst forth, vppwardes agayne by the bellywarde, so that the head myght descende downewardes by the backe part of the wombe, for then naturally agayne and without perill myght it proceade and come forth as the fyrst.

*May like
proluc
Verdim*

The thirde
of the byrth
figures.

iii. Agayne sometime the byrth cometh forth with both legges and feete first, the handes beyng lyfted vp aboue the head of the chylde, and this is the perillouste maner of byrth that is, as appeareth in the thirde of the birth figures. And here must the Midwyfe do what she may to turne the byrth (if it may be possible)

possible) to the first figure, and if it wyl not be, then reduce the handes of it downe to the sydes, and so to reduce it into the second figure. But if this also wyl not be, then receyue the feete as they come forth, and bynde them with some fayre linnen cloth, and so tenderly and very softly lose out the birth tyll al be come forth, and this is very ieoperdous labour.

iiii. Also sometyme the byrth cometh forwarde with one foote only, the other being left vpwarde, as appeareth in the fourth figure. And in this case it behoueth the labouryng woman to lay her vpryght vppon her backe, holdyng vpon her thyghes & belly, so that her head be the lower part of her body, then let the Midwyfe with her hande returne in agayne the foote that cometh out first, in as tender maner as may be, and warne the woman that laboureth to styre and moue her selfe, so that by the mouyng and styryng, the byrth maye be turned the head downeward, and so

*because
the arms
tho? the
midwyfe
at the
head.*

The fourth
figure.

to make a naturall byrth of it, and then to set the woman in the stoole agayne, and to do as ye dyd in the fyrste figure. But yf it be so, that notwithstanding the mothers styrreng and mouyng, the byrth do not turne, then must the Midwyfe with her hande softlye fetch out the other legge whiche remayned behynde, euermore takyng heede of this, that by handelyng of the chylde, she do not remoue ne set out of theyr place the two handes hanging downwarde toward the feete.

The fyfth figure.

*Mighty
Abscum
and all left h.
the midwyfe*

The sixth figure.

v. Lyke wyse sometyme it commeth to passe, that the side of the chylde commeth forward, as appeareth in the. v. figure, and then must the Midwyfe do so, that it may be returned to his naturall fassion, and so to come forth.

vi. Also sometyme the chylde commeth forth the feete forward, the legges beyng abroad, as in the. vi. figure, and then must the Midwife see, that the feete and legges maye be ioyned together, and so to proceade and come forth,
euer

euermore regardyng the handes, as I warned you before.

vii. If it come with one of the knees or both forwarde, as in the .vii. figure, then muste the Mydwyfe put vp the birth, tyl such time as the legges & feete come ryght forth, & then to do as afore.

The scuenth figure.

viii. When the chylde cometh headlong, one of the handes commyng out and appearng before, as in the .viii. figure, then let the birth proceade no farther, but let the Mydwyfe put in her hande, and tenderlye by the shoulders thruste in the byrth agayne, so that the hand may be resettled in his place, and the byrth to come forth ordynately and naturally, as in the first figure: But yf by this meanes the hande come not to his conuenient place, then let the woman lye vpryght with her thighes and belly vpwordes, and her head downewordes, so that by that meanes it may be brought to passe, and then byng her to her seate agayne.

The eyght figure.

Hand & head.

ix. But yf it proceade with bothe handes

The nynt figure.

handes forwardes, then muste ye lyke
wise do as afoze, by the shoulders thru-
styng it backe agayne, vntyll such time
as the hands lye close to the sides, & so to
come forth, as appeareth in the .ix. figure

The .x. figure

*Præhension
Vulva præhension*

x. But when it commeth arlsward
as in the .x. figure maye be seene, then
must the Mydwife with her handes re-
turne it agayne, vntyll such tyme that
the birth be turned, the legges and feete
forwarde, other els, yf it maye be so, it
were best that the head might come for-
warde, and so naturally to proceade.

The leuenth
figure.

?
*Cephalic
Version*

xi. And yf so be that it appeare and
come forth first with the shoulders, as
in the .xi. figure, then must ye fayze and
softlye thurst it backe agayne by the
shoulders, tyll suche tyme as the head
come forwarde.

The twelfth
figure.

xii. But when the byrth commeth
foorth with both the handes and both
the feete at once, as in the .xii. figure,
then must the Mydwife tenderly take
the chylde by the head, and returne the
legges vpwarde, & so to receiue it forth.

xiii. And

xiii. And when it cometh brestward as in the .xiii. figure, the legges & handes bydyng behynde, then let the Midwyfe take it by the feete or by the head, which that shalbe mooste apt and comodious to come forwarde, returnyng the rest vpyward, & so to receiue it forth: but if it may be hedling that shalbe best

The. xiii.
figure.

*Podali apodii
Cuphalu
Veni.*

xiiii. Nowe sometyme it chaunceth the woman to haue two at a burthen, & that both proceade together headlong, as in the .xiiii. figure, and then must the Midwyfe receyue the one after the other, but so, that she let not slyppe the one, whylest she taketh the first.

The. xiiii.
figure.

xv. If both come forth at once with theyr feete forward, then must the Midwyfe be very diligent to receiue first the one, and then the other, as hath ben shewed before.

The. xv.
figure.

Vny dnt

xvi. When the one cometh headlong, the other fote wyse, then must the Midwyfe helpe the byrth that is mooste nearest the issue, and it that cometh footeloug (if she can) to returne it vpon the

The. xvi.
figure.

The second Booke.

the head, as is spoken of before, takyng
euer heede that the one be not noysome
to the other in receyuyng forth of ey-
ther of them.

And to be short, let the Mydwyfe of-
ten tymes annoynt & mollifie the waye
and passage with some of the foresayde
oyntmentes, to make the womans la-
bour so muche the easyer, and haue the
lesse trauayle and payne. And yf there
chaunce to be any Apostume or disease
about those places in this time, by such
annoyntyng to alaye and swage the
payne, so that for the time it may be the
lesse grieffe to the partie, as I spake be-
fore also. And for them that be in this
case, it shalbe best to lye grouelyng, as I
sayde of the grosse, fatte, and fleshy wo-
man.

¶ Remedies and medicines by the which the la-
bour may be made moze tollerable, easy,
and without great payne.

Cap. v.

The

The thynges which helpe the birth & make it more easy, are these. First the woman that laboureth must eyther sytte groueling, or els vpright leaning backwarde, accordyng as it shall seme commodious and necessary to the partie, or as she is accustomed. And in winter or colde weather, the chamber wherin she laboureth must be warmed, but in sommer or hotte wether, let in the ayre to refresh her withall, lest betwene extreme heate and labour, the woman faint and sowne. And furthermore, she must be prouoked to sneesyng, and that eyther with the powder of *Eleborus*, or els of pepper. Also the sides of the woman muste be stroken downewarde with the handes, which thyng helpeth greatly and furthereth. And let the Midwyfe alwaye be very diligent, prouidyng and seing what shalbe necessary for the woman, annoyntyng the priuities with oyle, or other such grece as I spake of before, in this fashion.

Take

Meanes to
helpe & prouoke
the
birth.

Medical
Treatment

Sneezing

helbon
pepper.

fuction & caut

anointing

Re. for aumty. The second Booke.

A good mol-
lyfyng oynt-
ment.
oil of white lillies
or Duckes greese
Saffron dr.
Musk

Suffianin galanin
Myrrh.
Galbanum
Castor.

Yellow stone
Myrrh.
Madder
Galbanum
Oppoponacum?

Culver Dung?
Hawks dung.
Oppoponacum.

Rue Juice.
Aristolochia rotunda
Bothor martis
Ciclaminus
or. Malum terre.
Stouisacu.

Heleborus.
Oppoponacum.

!!!?

Take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes or Duckes grese, & with that temper two graynes waight of Saffron, and one grayne of muske, & there with annoynt the secreete partes. If this pro- fyte nothyng, then vse this suffumigation.

Take Myrrhe, Galb. num, Castorium, lette those be beaten, and make lyke pylles of them, tempe- red together with bulles gall: then take a dram of these pylles, and put it on hoate coales, and let the woman receaue the fume and sauour of it vnderneath.

Another perfume: Take yelow brymstone, Myrrhe, mader, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, of eche lyke much, and temper all those together, making of them pylles, and with those also ye maye make fume, to be receaued vnderneath.

Item, the fume of Culver dunge, or of Haw- kes dunge, by puttyng to of Oppoponacum, is soue- raigne for the same. All these fumes open the poores beneath, and causeth nature to be the freer in deliuerance.

Also it is very good to dyp woll in the iuyce of Rue, and the same to conueye into the se- cretes. Also the powder of Aristolochia rotunda, or the roote called Bothor martis, Ciclaminus, or malum terre, or the seede of Stauisagre, any of these wrap- ped in woll, and conueyed inwarde prouoketh and calleth forth the byrth.

Item take Heleborus, Oppoponacum, and wrappe them together in wooll, and minister them in- warde, for that wyll byrnyng forth and prouoke the birth, whether it be alyue or dead. Also the rynde

The seconde booke. Fol. lxxviii.

rynde and barke called *Cassia lignea* beaten to powder, and tempered with wyne and dronken, prouoketh well the byrth.

Item *Asa fetida*, of the bygnesse and wayght of a pease, myngled together with *Castorium* of the wayght of a dram, beaten together and tempered with wyne mixt with water, and so dronken, is very good to prouoke the byrth. Also Canell dronke with wyne, is very good.

Item, take a scruple of Rofes, with the water of the seede of fenigreke, Cicercula, Maydenhayze, all beaten together and sodden, and the oyle of blewe floure deluce, a smale quantitie tempered therewithall, and then geue it to the woman that laboureth, and it shall prouoke the byrth greatly. Also *Cassia lignea* and *Asa fetida* dronke with wyne, be very good for the same.

Also holpoke sodden in conduite water and dronken, is soueraigne for the same purpose, and it is very good for her to washe her in the water in the whiche this Holpoke is decocte and sodden.

Item, certayne pylles the whiche make the labour easie and without payne.

Take Canell or Cinamome and Sauine, of eche a dram, of *Cassia lignea* a dram and a halfe, of Myrthe, *Aristolochia rotunda*, and *Costus amarus*, of eche a dram, of *Storax liquida* halfe a dram, and of *Oppium* the wayght of .xii. graynes, brate these all together, and fourme them into pylles, and geue vnto the woman two drammes of these pylles with

Cassia lignea
with
wine
(Drink)

Asa fetida & *Castorium*
with
wine & water
(Drink)

Canell with
wine
(Drink)

Roses
with
water of fenigreke
Cicercula
Mayden hayze
oil of blewe floure
de luce
(Drink)

Cassia lignea &
Asa fetida
with
wine

Holpoke
with
wine

Bath of holpoke
with
wine

Pilles.

Cinamome
Sauine an .ss.
Cassia lignea .ss.
Myrthe.

Aristolochia rotunda .ss.
leged *Storax* .ss.
Oppium .ss.
heat with wine
pills.
Dose .ss. of the pills
with wine of
aldrone

The seconde booke.

with two ounces of good olde wyne.

Item Saffron and *Syler montanum* prouoketh the byrth of any liuing thing, if it be dronken: howbeit to a woman geue neuer passyng a dram at once of Saffron, for greater quantitie should greatly hurt.

Item, take. v. drammes of Sauine, of Rue or herbe grace one dragma and an halfe, of Juniper beryes two drammes, of *Asa fedida*, *Amoniacum*, Madder, of eche two drammes, of these make pylles, geuen to the woman in labour, with water in the whiche is sodden Sauine and Perniriell, or els with the broth of *Cicercula*, and the iuyce of Rue shall helpe very greatly.

Item, take two drammes of Sauine, of *Asa fedida*, *Amoniacum* and Madder, of eche halfe a dram, these temper together in pilles, and geue her with wyne, one dram of the same.

Item, take of *Aristolochia longa*, Pepper, and Myrre, of eche lyke muche, confict them together with wyne, and make pylles of them, and minister them with an ounce of water of the decoction of Lupines, these pylles be of suche efficacy and strength, that it alleuiateth and bnpayneth the byrth, it deliuereth the Matrix or Mother from all maner of byrth, be it alyue or dead.

Item, take of whyte *Pedellium*, Myrre, and Sauine, of eche lyke muche, temper these with *Cassia lignea*, and Honye, and make pylles of them to the bygnesse of Peason, and of these pylles geue at ech time fiue to the labouryng waman, whiche

Saffron
Syler montanum
 (Gruke)
 Zi of Saffron
 The quality of
 —
 Saurin ʒv
 Rue - ʒoʒ
 Juniper } ʒii
 Madder }
 Asa fedida }
 & amoniacum }
 Madder. an ʒii
 Cicercula
 is sodden in water
 —
 Saurin ʒii
 Asa fedida
 Amoniacum
 Madder
 an ʒoʒ
 —
 Aristolochia longa
 Pepper
 Myrre
 an ʒoʒ
 —
 Pedellium
 Myrre } ʒoʒ
 Saurin }
 Honye }
 Cassia lignea ʒv

The seconde booke. Fol. lxx.

whiche be of the same might and strength, that the other pilles spoken of here next before are.

Item, take of Myrre, Castorium, and Storax, of eche one dramme, temper them with Honye, and make pylles of it: these for this purpose excell and passe all other, they be of suche vertue and strength in operation.

Myrre.
Castor
Storax } ʒss
Honye } ʒss

A plaster to prouoke the byrth.

Take wyldc Gowarde, and seeth it in water, in the same water temper Myrre, the iuyce of Rue, and Barlye meale, so much as shalbe sufficient, stampe these thinges together, and make it plaster wyse, then lay it to the womans bellye betwene the Nauyll and the nether part: This plaster shall helpe marueylously.

And although many other thynges there be which haue vertue and power to prouoke byrth, and to helpe it, yet leauyng all such thinges for breuitie and shortnes, we haue set here onlye a certayne, whose efficacie and power shalbe sufficient to this present purpose.

Howe

Retention of the Placenta The seconde booke.

Howe the secondine or seconde byrth
shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come not
freely of his owne kynde.

Capit. v.



Ere also sometime it cometh to passe, that the Seconde whiche is wont to come together with the byrth, remayne and tarry behynde, and foiove not, and that for diuers causes. One is, for because peradventure the woman hath ben so sore weakened and feeblished with trauaile, dolour, and payne of that first byrth, that she hath no strength remaynyng to helpe her selfe, to the expellyng of the seconde byrth. Another may be, that it be entangled, tyed, or let within the matrix (whiche chaunceth many times) or that it be destitute of humors, so that the water be flowen from it sooner then time is, whiche shoulde make the places more slippery and more easie to passe thozow: Or els that the places ouer weried with long and sore labour,

Inertia

Mulier ad huc

* "Let us all together
knowe his name" for

"By heavens I'll make a ghost of
him that lets me"
Hamlet
Shakespeare

for payne contract or gather together, and enclose themselfe agayne, or that the places be swolne for anguise and payne, and so let the commynng forth of the seconde byrth.

But to be short, of whatsoeuer cause it be thus stopped, the Mydwyfe in any wyse muste fynde such meanes, that it may be vnloosed and expulsed. For otherwise, great inconueniencie shoulde chaunce to the partie, & specially suffocation and choking of the Matrix, whiche also must so much the more be taken hede to, for because the seconde byrth re-
tayned and kept within, wyll soone putrifie and rot, wherof will ensue yll noy-
some & pestiferous vapours ascendyng to the hart, the braynes, & the midriffe, through the which meanes the woman shalbe short wynded, faynte harted, often soundyng and lying without any maner of mouyng or styrryng in the pulces: yea, and many times is playne-
ly suffocated, strangled, and dead of it. Wherefore that none of these thynges
M I happen,

Irregular
Contraction

Pyæmia
flow
retention.
"pestiferous
vapours ascendyng
to the hart"!
how great
how real
(of the case)
elocute
modern
pathology

Retention of
placenta

The seconde booke.

Treatment
Retention of
flowes for
weakenes.

From Inertia

Retention

of placenta
from

From
Inertia
Constriction.

happen, with all diligence and payne it muste be prouyded that the secondine be expelled.

If retention of it come by weakenes of the labourer, through long trauayle, then must she be recomforted and strenghted with good comfortable meates and drinckes whiche may enhart her, as broath made of the yolcke of Egges, or with good olde Wyne, and good fat and tidie fleshe, or Wydes, Hennes fleshe, Capons, Partridge, Piggins and such like.

And yf retention of this secondine come, because the place is contract together agayne, eyther els that the Matrix is swollen for long paine, then must be vled such thinges to prouoke it out, the whiche do make the waye slipper, sople, & easie for it to proceade, with the oyles or ointmentes spoken of before, as oyle of Whyte Lillies, of *Maioram*, and of blewe Lillies.

Item, the beries of Juniper, or *Galbanum* beaten to powder and dronke with luke warmed Wyne, wyl cause the same to
ysue

*Reluctum of
Placenta*

ysue out.

Item, Sothernwood, or els Peniri all sodden in Wyne, and the decoction dronken, is of the same vertue.

Item, to suffume the secretes With the perfumes Written of before, is good for this purpose, and the vapour of the Water in whiche Malloves, Holyoke, and Berefoote be sodden, receyued beneath, is lyke good.

brantford

Also to washe that partes in Water, in whiche is sodden branne, or to holde a lyttle baggefull of sodden branne to the place, and therewithall to soke the place, is very profitable.

Treatment

But if the retention of the secundine come by reason that it is entangled or fastened in some place of the Matrix, so that it wyl not resolue ne loole, then make a fume vnderneath of Wymstone, Iuie leaues, and Cresses, or els of Cresses and fygges.

*notio
adheron
of placenta*

Also of all odoriferous and sweet smelling thynge, as Ambre, Muske, Frankencense,

Gallia Muscata,

and confec

The seconde booke.

tion neare, the which sauoures and per-
fumes put on the embers, muste be so
closely receiued vnderneath, that no part
of the smell do ascende to the nose of the
Woman. For to the nose shoulde the sa-
uoure of nothing come, but only of such
thinges, the which stinke, or haue abho-
minable smel, as *Asa fetida*, *Castorium*, mans
hayre or womans hayre burnt, Pe-
cockes fethers burnt. Item, in this case
it shalbe very good to make a perfume
vnderneath, of the houe of an Asse, which
thinges although they be of yll sauour,
yet they be of such nature and efficacie,
that they occasionate not onely the se-
condine, but also dead byrthes to pro-
ceade and come forth out of the Matrix.

bearyng down

And in this case also let the Woman
holde her breath inwarde so muche as
she can, for that shall dypue downwarde
suche thynges as be in the body to be
expelled.

Item, let her be prouoked to sneese
with the pouder of *Eleborus* or *Pepper*
put in the nose, holding her mouth and
nose

nose so close as may be.

Also the oyntment whiche is called *Vnguentum Basilicon* conueyed into the *Ma-*
trix, is very good, for it mollifieth the
place, and draweth out the secondine
perforce, the which so sone as it is expel-
led, infude the oyle of Roses into the
same matrix. Item Rose Water tempe-
red with a quantitie of the powder of
Hollyoke, and dronke, is good to expell
the secondine.

And yf it be so that any part of the
secondine do appeare, let the *Midwyfe*
receaue it tenderly, losyng it out fayre
and softly lest it breake, and if ye doubt
that it wil breake, then let the *Midwife*
tye that parte of the whiche she hath
handfast, to the womans legge or fote, **||**
not very strayte lest it breake, neyther
very laxe lest it slip in agayne, and then
cause her to sneese. Nowe yf the secon-
dine tary or sticke, so that it come not
quickly forwarde, then louse it a little
and a little very tenderly, wreathing it
from one side to another, tyll such time

M 3 as

*Rosewater
powder of
hollyoke
drank*

*not to allow
medicines to
break off*

*an old
custome
still retained
relaxed
1867
increasing &
coughing
in cases of
various
febrile & it
triph. it has
been tried
the leg.*

The second Booke.

Which her
knew done
his cough
Tudor
to remove
an adherent
placenta
885

As
Mention
of murther

as it be gotten out, but ever beware of
violent and hasty moving of it, lest that
with the seconde birth ye remove the
Matrix also.

And yf in this meane whyle the wo-
man faynt or sowne by reason of great
payne ensuyng of the takyng away of
this secundine, then muste ye minister
such thinges to her the which comfort
the head and the hart, as be electuaries
which are confict with Muske, Ambre
and the confection of precious stones,
as Diamargariton, and suche other. Also
suche thynges the whiche comfort the
stomacke, as Dia galanga, Dia cinamonum, and
such lyke, whiche are alway in a redy-
nesse at the Apothecaries, the whiche
also she shall receiue with wine.

Item to remove the secundine, and to
expel it, take Rue, Horehound, Sothern-
wood, and Motherworthe, of eche lyke
quantitie, and then take so much of the
oyle of Lyllyes, as may be sufficient to
steepe, moysten, and soke the foresayde
herbes

herbes in, put all this together into a glased potte couered with suche a couer, that it haue a little hole or vente aboue in the toppe of it, and sette this potte ouer the fyre of coales, so that it boyle a little whyle, then take it from the fyre, & set it vnder the stoole where the woman sytteth, made for the nonce, haung a pype made for the purpose, of the whiche the one ende ye shall put into the vente or hole of the couer of the pot, and the other ende must the partie receyue into her body, and so to syt closed rounde about with clothes, that no vapour or ayre go forth of the potte, haung a fewe coles vnder it to kepe it hotte, and thus sytte the space of an houre or two, tyll suche tyme as the seconde moue or begyn to proceade of his owne kynde.

And yf it be so that ye profyte not this wayes, yet then laye this plaister on the bellye betwene the nauyll and the secretes, of the whiche we shall speake

The second Booke.

*He knew
that the
Membres
left - w^d
decompose
the east
off heat
that without
peris*

hereafter, the which is of such operati-
on and efficacie, that it expelleth dead
birthes. If for al this the second in come
not forwarde, then leaue it, and vse no
more medicines ne remedies to that
purpose, but let it alone, for within few
dayes it wyl putrifie and corrupt, and
dissolue vnto a watery substance, thicke
lyke brine or other fer mixed with wa-
ter, and so issue forth. Howbeit, in the
meane whyle it wyl put the woman to
great paine in the head, in the hart, and
in the stomacke, as we touched before.

peritoculis.

Howe that many thynges chaunce to the women
after theyr labour, and howe to auoyde, de-
fende, or to remedie the same.

Cap. vi.

Is also to be vnderstanded
that many tymes after the de-
liueraunce, happeneth to wo-
men other the feuer or ague, or
swellyng, or inflation of the body, other
tumblyng in the belly, or els commoti-
on or settelyng out of order of the Mo-
ther

ther or Matrix. Cause of the whiche thynges, is sometimes lacke of due and sufficient purgation and clensing of the flowres after the birth, or els contrary- wylse ouermuche flowyng of the same, which soze doth weaken the woman. Also the great labour and styrryng of the Matrix in the byrth.

Then as oft as it commeth for lacke of due purgation of the flowres, there muste be ministred suche thynges the which may prouoke the same, whether it be by medicines taken at the mouth, or by lotion and washing of the feete, or by fumes, or odour, or emplastration, or by decoction of herbes seruyng to that purpose, or els by oyntmentes, and such other thinges, accordyng as the person or the peryll doth require, of the whiche thinges few or no women be ignorant. And ye must take diligent hede that she be exactly and vtterly purged, to this be agreable all suche simples whiche prouoke vrine, and open the vaynes, makyng free way for the bloud to passe
and

The second Booke.

and sende the humours and matter
downeward, as Motherwort, Asarum,
Savine, Peniriell, Parcely, Charuyll,
Annis seede, Fenell seede, Juniper ber-
ries, Rue, Bay berries, Germaunder,
Valerian, Tymme, Cinamome, Spike-
narde, and such other. Al those thinges
as they do prouoke and cause vrine, so
do they also prouoke & cause the flow-
ers to depart. Howebeit, as neare as ye
can, vse none of these thynge without
the counsaile of an experte Physition,
lest whylest ye helpe one place ye hurte
another. Also to sneese, helpeth muche
to this matter, & to holde in the breath
enclosyng the nose and the mouth. Al-
so fumigation made of the eyes of salte
fyshe, or of the houe of a horse vnder-
neath, prouoketh the flowres. If ye pro-
fite not by this meanes, then being able
to beare it, let her bloud in the vaine cal-
led *Saphina*, vnder the ancles of the feete,
for this prouoketh flowres chiefly of
all other thynge.

right

Lyke wyle do, yf the woman haue the
ague

ague after her labour, for that cometh
of like cause by retention of the flowres,
and in the feuer let her vse to drinke wa-
ter, in the which is decocte Barley bea-
ten, or Cicer and Barley together, or
water in whiche be sodden *Tamarindi*, or
whay of milke, and let her eate a *Cullis*
made of a Cocks, and sweete *Pomegra-*
nates, for these thynge do prouoke the
flowres, and mittigateth the immode-
rate heate, refreshing greatly the body,
lousyng and opening such thinges the
whiche before were constricted and clud-
dered together.

For the ague
in women
with chyld.

If the body after labour do swell and
inflate, then let her drynke water, in the
whiche is sodden Cicer & Cummin, bea-
ten together.

Item good olde wine with the electuary cal-
led *Diacuminum*, or of the *Trochiskes* of *Alkechen-*
gie, other wyse called *Halicacabus*.

Also in this case a clyster made of such thyn-
ges the which do banquishe and expell ventosi-
ties and wyndenesse, as *Annis* seede, *fennell*
seede, *Rue* the herbe and the seede, *Bay* berryes,

Cum

The second Booke.

Cummin. &c. Also a pessarie or suppositar made for that part, of *Aristolochia Rotunda*, *Squinantum*, *Storax Liquida*, *Dorenicum*, *Zeduaris*.

9
" After paines "

Treatment
Sharp use.

Agayne, yf the woman after her labour haue frettyng and knawynge of the guttes & payne of the Matrix, and other secreete partes there about, then let her vse the vapour and fume of suche thynges the whiche haue vertue to mitigate, swage, and alay the payne, as *Hallowes*, *Holyoke*, *Fenegreke*, *Comin*, *Camomell*, and *Sauine*. Of these also make emplasters and bagges, the whiche may be applyed to the payned places.

Also to annoynt the places with *Oleum sesaminum* (yf it were to be had) or with oyle of sweete Almondes. And yf no great heate do abounde in the woman, she may drinke *Triacle* or *Trifera magna*, with wyne in which is decoct *Motherwort* or *Muggewort*.

Also agaynst payne in the priuie partes, take *Peniriell*, *Policaria*, sixe leaues of baye tree, seeth them together, and receaue the vapour vnderneath closely.

Item, take *Rue*, red *Motherwort*, *Sothernwood*, beate them together, and temper them with the oyle of *Penerial*, and put all together into a pot, and set it ouer the fyre a while tyl it be somewhat soden together, and then take it of agayne, & put it into a little rounde linnen bag made for the purpose, the whiche with these herbes in it, ye shall conuey into the secretes.

Item, take *Camomel* and *Lyne*, of eche lyke much

The seconde booke. Fol. lxxvi.

much. iiii. handfulls, bray them together and seeth them with whyte wyne, and then put it in a rounde bag of linnen, as befoze was done, and conuay it into the womans priuie partes.

Item, let her drinke for the same purpose, two graynes of muske with wyne.

Item, take whyte Onions and couer them vnder the hote ashes, the whiche when they be well roasted, beate them together with freshe Butter vnsalted, and make it in maner of a plaster, and then put it in a linnen bagge, and conuay it into the places, as befoze: in the meane whyle perfumyng the priuie partes with white frankencence and Storax.

If it be so that the woman be vexed about the backe and loynes after her labour, take Camomell and Muggewort, of eche two handfulls, of Wormewood, Sothernwood, of eche one handfull, of Motherwort three handfulls, of Cinamome and Nutmegges beaten small halfe an ounce, decoct all these thinges together, and in the water of this decoction beyng warme, dyp a sponge or other linnen clothes, fomenting, sokyng, and strekyng the backe with the same, and so do often tymes, or els put all these foresayd herbes together sodden in a bagge, and lay it plaster wyle to the backe.

If this profite not, take oyle Gardine, oyle of whyte Lillies, of eche an ounce and an halfe, to the whiche put a dram of Nutmegges beaten to small powder, with this annoynt the backe.

Item, take oyle of Anete, oyle of Camomell,
of

The seconde booke.

of eche an ounce, Oyle of whyte Lillies two ounces, of ware two drams, disolue all these together ouer the fyre, and therewith annoint the backe.

What reme-
dies when
the flowres
issue more a-
boundantly
then nedeth.

But yf after the labour the flowres yssue more vrbemently, and in greater aboundaunce then they shoulde, to the great esseblyshyng of the woman, and inducing of much langour and paynefulnes, then first shall ye note wherevpon in commeth, for the cause knowen, the disease may the more redply be cured, and causes of it be diuers, but mooste especiall those that folowe, that is to say: Of much aboundaunt superfluous bloud contayned in the whole body, or of much commixtion of the colericke humour and the bloud together, by the whiche the bloud is enfired and chaufed, and so distendeth, openeth, and setteth abroade the vaynes whiche descende to the Matrix.

Also the bloud beyng very thyn and waterish, for so it penetrateth, thrielleth, and yssueth forth the sooner. Also if the vaynes be very large, and receiue much
bloud,

bloud, for in that case they sende forth the more agayne. And yf the Matrix be vnmightie and weakened, the vaynes lyke wyse weake and large, so that they cannot retayne nor withholde the bloud.

Also if the body of the woman, or the outward partes be very dense, close, and compact together, so that the outward pories be contract and shutte, in suche wise, that no vapours or swet can issue out at them, then this shal cause the yll humours (whiche other wyse woulde passe through the pories in swet) to remaine within the bodye, and there to engender and encrease great fluxe and aboundaunce of matter, whiche procedeth with the flowres and augmenteth the quantitie of them.

Also yf the vaynes of the Matrix be (by some chaunce) open and flow forth, as yf the Matrix be perysshed or other wyse viciate. Or yf it chaunce that the woman haue hadde a fall, or hath ben thurst, or beaten, by all and any
of

The seconde booke.

of this meanes may come this inordi-
nate fluxe of flowres.

Good coun-
sell to the
woman.

Nowe seying then that it ensueth by
so manyfolde occasions and causes, it
shalbe mete that women in this case be
nothing ashamed ne abashed to disclose
their minde vnto expert Physitians, shew-
ing them euery thyng in it, as they
knowe wherevpon it shoulde come, so
that the Physition vnderstandyng the
Womans mynde, may the sooner by his
learnynge and experience consider the
true cause of it, and the very remedye
to amende it. And many thinges there
be whiche sease and restrayne this ouer
muche flowyng of flowres, both Elec-
tuaries, Confections, Trochiskes, Pou-
ders, Clysters, Odours, Suffumigati-
ons, Bathes, Plasters, and Dynt-
mentes, of whiche for the loue of wo-
men I wyll here set forth the most prin-
cipall and best.

First then to stinte and restrayne the outra-
gious fluxe of flowres, it shalbe very good to
binde the armes straight and strongly, and not
the feete or handes, as some vnwyle men do
teache

three drammes: beate all these thynges together, temperyng it with the rose Sugre, and let her receave of it in the Mornynge and Euenyng, at eche tyme one dram, with. vi. sponesfulles of Plantane water, or els the water of *Dursa pastoris*.

Item, take of the stone *Ematbites*, and rub it on a Barbers whetstone, called a hone, tyll the hone seme red, then washe it agayne from the hone with Plantane water, and so do oftentimes, vntyll thou haue a good quantitie of it, and euery mornynge let the woman drynke. iiii. oz. v. sponesfulles of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Trochiskes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Trochiskes of *Carabe*, or *Ambre*, and the Trochiskes of *Bole armeniacke*, which must be ministred a dram or more of eyther of them, with. iiii. oz. v. sponesfulles of Plantane water.

Who that requireth farther in this matter, let them aske counsaile of the Physitions.

Nowe if it be so that there be engendred any Apostume or other disease in the priuie places after her labour, then muste the Apostumes and diseases be clenched, purged, and healed, the payne & ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the berryes or leaues of *Night-*

The second Booke.

scraping of a goates horne, red Corall, *Terra sigillata*, whyte Frankensence, of eche (beyng well and finely beaten) two Drams, of whyte waxe two ounces: al those tempered together, make them in an oyntment, and therewith annoynthe the wombe and the secretes.

¶ A bath concernynge the same.

Take Wormewood, Plantane the more and the lesse, the toppes of Wynges, freshe braunches of wylde Mulberies, or of the bramble, bryrpe Damassons, Sloes or Bolasse, wylde Peares, Medlers or Mispyles, of eche three handfuls, of red rose leaues two handfules, of Daisies, of all sortes of Chyffles, of eche two handfuls, of Cinkfoyle the leaues and rootes, Tormentyll the rootes, Colubyne, of eche an handfull: Also of Acorne cuppes a sawcerfull, of Gaules, of Acornes pylled, of *Bursa pastoris*, of eche two handfules, beate all these to powder, cutting and brosynge that that wyll not be beaten to powder, and seeth them together in rayne water, or els in water in the which ten or twelue burnt flynt stones haue ben quenched. This done, let the woman bath her selfe in this water by to the Nauyll, and when she commeth forth of the bath, geue her to drinke two Drams of *Electuarium Athanasie*, or *Miclete*, with Plantayne water, or yf she be sore thursty, with red wyne.

And lyke wyse ye maye geue to her of these electuaryes that folowe. Take good olde roose Suger two ounces, of red Coral, burnt Iuery, Wole armeniacke, of eche two Drams, of *Elemas*

three drammes: beate all these thynges together, temperyng it with the rose Sugre, and let her receave of it in the Mornyng and Evening, at eche tyme one dram, with. vi. sponesfulles of Plantane water, or els the water of *Bursa pastoris*.

Item, take of the stone *Ematbites*, and rub it on a Barbers whetstone, called a hone, tyll the hone seme red, then washe it agayne from the hone with Plantane water, and so do oftentimes, vntyll thou haue a good quantitie of it, and euery mornyng let the woman drynke. iiii. oz. v. sponesfulles of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Trochiskes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Trochiskes of *Carabe*, or *Ambre*, and the Trochiskes of *Bole armeniacke*, which must be ministred a dram or more of eyther of them, with. iiii. oz. v. sponesfulles of Plantane water.

Who that requireth farther in this matter, let them aske counsaile of the Physitions.

Nowe if it be so that there be engendred any Apostume or other disease in the priuie places after her labour, then muste the Apostumes and diseases be clensted, purged, and healed, the payne & ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the berryes or leaues of *Rightshade*,

The second Booke.

shade, and the iuyce of Plantane, also the oyle of Roses, so that all those things be tempered together, and the places annoynted therewith.

Item otherwyle. Take the whyte of an egge, womans mylke, the iuyce of Purlane, and temper al these together, and conuey it to the diseased place.

These medicines do refrigerate & coole the vehement heate wont to be in Apostumes. As for the reste, howe to open, drye and clense such Apostumations, ye must consult with some Physition or expert Surgian.

Many tymes also it chaunceth that the fundement gutte comineth forth both in man and woman, and specially in women in this busines, by reason of theyr great labour and stryuyng with them selfe: Wherefore in this case it is the Mydwifes parte, with her hande warmed and wet in whyte wine, to reduce it backe into his place agayne, the which yf she can not by this meanes, for because peraduenture it be swollē, then
let

let her dissolve butter in Whyte Wyne warmed, and therein dip Woll, with the which wrappe the same gutte a while, so doying often tymes tyll it be swaged, that it may be returned in againe. And ye may vse in the steade of Whyte Wine like warme mylke.

And when it is thus returned and reduced into his place: Take waxe and melt it together with Masticke or whyte frankensence, then spreade it vpon linnen plaster wyse, and laye it ouer the place where it came forth, byndyng it to, with a linnen cloth or roller, for partying of. And let this be done thus so often as she goeth to stoole, after that she hath done, vntyll such tyme that it be so settled within, that it come no more out.

And yf ye wyll not occupy waxe: then dyppe woll in the oyle of Masticke, or of Spyke Mar- dy, & lay it vnto the place ouer the fundement, byndyng it fast vpon the place, as before.

Item another way. Washe and soke the gut with the water in which is decocte and sodden such thinges which exicate, drye, and constrain or combynde: as Galles, Cipres nuts, flowres of Pomegranade, Ambre, Masticke, franc- kensence, *Sanguis draconis*, and when it is well was- shed and soaked with this water, then take the powder of an Hartes horne burnt, and strue it rounde about the gutte, and so restore it againe

The second Booke.

into his place.

Agayne, sometyne it commeth to passe, that after the womans labour the Matrix is remoued out of his place, & appeareth forth: Then let it be washed and soaked with the water in which be sodden these thynges folowynge.

Take of Cipres nuttes, Spyke narde, *Balaustians*, Acorne cuppes, of eche an ounce, of Hespyles, and vnrype wylde Peares, and vnrype Apples, Plummes, and Damsons or Bollasse, of eche a handefull. And suche of those as be to be powdered, beate them to powder, and the rest deuide and cut them small, then seeth them altogether in rayne water, or els in water in the whiche Steele, beyng redde hotte, hath ben oftentymes quenched, and in the same water let the partie bathe her by to the Nauyll, or els dyp a sponge or a Locke of wool in it, and therewith washe and soke the same Matrix oftentymes. Then euer with a fayre cleane linnen cloth wpye it cleane agayne, and strewe bpon it the powder folowynge, beaten very small, and searsed through sylke.

Take of Frankensence, *Carabe*, Galles, *Balaustians*, Cipres nuttes, Alome, *Antimony*, Bole Armeniacke, Masticke, of eche lyke much, beate al these to very fine powder, & strewe the Matrix with it, then tenderly reduce it into his place agayne with warme linnen clothes binding it by. Vnt
yf

if so be that the Matrix be swollen, so that by this meanes it wyl not be restored to his naturall place agayne, then dissolue butter in whyte wyne, as ye dyd before, and with the same soke it, vnto such tyme as it be swaged, and then reduce it.

Agayne, sometime it chaunceth that the womans Nauyl through labour is dissolued, so that it openeth it selfe: then make a small tente of fine linnen, and annoynt it with this oyntment that followeth, & the same put into the Nauyll.

Remedies for
the womans
Nauyl, when
it openeth it
selfe for paine
in the labour.

Take whyte Frankensence, and beate it to powder, and then temper it with the whyte of an egge, so that it be after the maner of liquid hony, with this annoynt the Nauyll within and without, annoynting also the tent, the which being put in the hole of the Nauyl, binde some cloth ouer it to kepe it in his place.

Howe that
somtime the
priue parte
& fundement
become one.

Item, many tymes it chaunceth that thozow the great difficultie & thronges of labour, the priue parte and the fundement become one, by reaso of rupture and breaking of the same part in the deliuerance of the chylde, and that by that meanes the Matrix descendeth and issueth downe, the whiche thynge chaunceth sometymes, by reason that

The second Booke.

the same place is very narrowe and also tender, and the byrth bygge & of great growth, so that it proceadeth with such violence, that it breaketh the way before it.

When this mishappe falleth, fyrste washe and soke the Matrix, and also reduce it to his place agayne, after the maner as I tolde you here immediatly before, then heale this bracke & wounde by sowyng of both sydes of it together agayne with a sylken threde, as Chirurgions do other woundes, & yf that lyke ye not, then maye ye cure it other wyse without sowyng, thus.

Take two lyttle peeces of linnen cloth, eche of the length of the wounde, and in breadth two fingers broade, spreade the little clothes with some fast cleaving plaster, the which wyll cause the cloutes to sticke fast where they shalbe set: then fasten them, the one on the one side of the rift, the other on the other syde, so that nothing appeare betwene the peeces of linnen in the myddes of them but only the clyfte and ryfte of the wounde in the breadth of a strawe. Then (this done) sowe the sydes of the linnen together close, as before I byd you to sowe the skyn, and when they be thus styched together, lay a
little

The second booke. Fol. lxxxii.

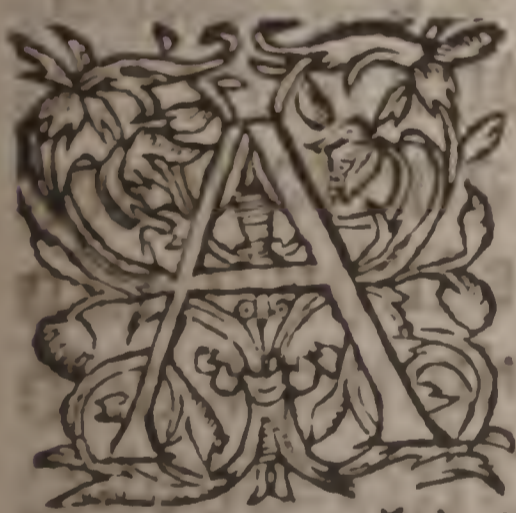
little liquid pitche or tarre upon the seame. And this done, the lappes and sydes of the wounde vnder the linnen plaster wyll growe together agayne and heale, and then maye ye remoue your plasters.

¶ Item another way.

Take Camfely dyled, and beate it to powder, also a little quantitie of Cinamome beaten to powder, ioyne them together, and strow of this powder into the wounde, and without fault it shall heale.

¶ Of aborcementes, or vntymely birthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it maye be defended, holpen, and eased.

Cap. vii.



Aborcement, or vntymelye birth, is when the woman is deliuered before due season, and before the fruite be rypp (as in the .iii. .iiii. or v. moneth) before the birth haue lyfe, and sometymes after it hath lyfe it is deliuered before it stirre, being by some chaunce dead in the mothers wombe. Of the whiche thynge there be many and diuers causes.

Many causes of vntymely birthes.

First, sometimes the mouth of the
Matrix

Matrix is so large and ample, that it can not conveniently close it selfe together, neither conteine the feature or conception: Or els it may be so corrupted & infected with vicious, slymye, fleumaticke, and other Wateryshe humours, that the cavitie or holownesse therof is thereby made so slipperye that the feature conceaued can not there remaine, but slippeth and flydeth foorth againe. Also sometymes the Matrix is apostumated and soze, so that for payne it can not conteyne the conception.

Item, sometymes the Cotilidons, that is the vaines by the which the conception and feature is tyed and fastened in the Matrix (thorowe the which also the feature receiueth nourishment and foode, as is declared in the first Booke) be stopped with viscos & yll humours, or els swollen by inflasion, so that they breake, by the whiche meanes, the feature destitute of his wont nourishment, perysbeth and dyeth, & that most commonly in the seconde or thirde moneth after

after conception. Wherfore Hipocrates
saith: All such Women Whiche be im-
pregnate or conceived, being of a meane
state in their body (that is to say, nether
to fatte or grosse, ne to spare or leane) yf
it chaunce any suche to aborte in the se-
conde or thirde moneth (no other eui-
dent cause appearing) knowe ye for cer-
taine, that it ensueth for because the Co-
tilidons be opplete, stopped, and stuffed
with yll humours, and be swollen and
puffed therewith that they breake, and
so consequentlpe the feature dyeth for
fant of foode.

Item, abortement sometyme com-
meth by reason that some of the places
about the Matrix be diseased and grie-
ued, as yf *Intestinum rectum*, whiche is cal-
led the fundament gut, be vicerate, ha-
uyng the pyles or Hemorroides, or the
visicke or bladder be swollen or encūbred
with the stone, the strangury, or other e-
uil. In these cases through the great la-
bour & paine the which the partie hath
in endeuoring & enforcing her self other
to

Abortment
by reason of
some grieke
about the
Matrix.

The second Booke.

to stoole, or to make Water, be engendred great motions downeward, whereby many times the handfastnes of the Cotilidons is broken.

Aborcement
by Tenas-
mus.

Also aborcement maye come of a disease called *Tenasmus*, the which is when one hath ever great desyre and luste to the stoole, and yet can do nothyng, nevertheless the parties greatly do enforce and payne them selfe to it. And as *Hipocrates* saith, the pregrnaunt woman which hath *Tenasmus*, for the moste parte abhorteth, that is to say, bringeth forth her chylde out of tyme.

Aborcement
through the
cough.

Item the cough, if it be greuous, causeth the same. And as the forenamed excellent *Physition* saith, suche as are very spare and leane, and brought low, evermore lyghtly do abort, for because that all the meate and foode the which they receyve, turneth to foode, nourishment, and restauration of theyr owne bodyes, and so is the conception destitute of foode, wherefore necessarily it dyeth.

Item

Item, this chaunce also comineth by ouermuch bleeding at the nose, or other where, or issuyng of the flowres immoderately. And so saith *Hypocrates*, yf the woman yelde flowres after her conception, it can not be that the feature do long proue, the whiche saying must be vnderstande, yf they flowe vehemently, or that the partie be weake and veryspate, or yf it be after the third moneth, for it maye be well, that in the first and seconde moneth flowres may issue, and yet no daunger. For as yet little foode and noysment satisfieth the conception, for the smalnesse therof.

Item, to be let bloud may be the cause of aboysment, whiche must be vnderstande, in such as haue but little store of bloud: but such as haue great copie and plentie of bloud, may without any peryll (if any vrgent cause require it) be let bloud, so that it be after the fourth moneth, and before the seuenth. Howbeit, I woulde that none shoulde be let bloud, except some great and wayghtie cause

dyd require it.

Item, it may come by taking of some strong purgation before the fourth moneth, and after the seventh moneth.

And yf it be so that any necessitie do so require, that she must needes receave a purgation, let it be done betwene the fourth and the seventh moneth after the conception, for then may it be with least peryll. And see that the purgation be very gentle and easy.

Also this maye come by reason of a continuall fluxe, be it blouddy or other wyse, and speciall ye yf the woman be weake & spare, for by that meanes the conception is greatly weakened and peryshed. Also ouermuch vometyng may be cause of aborsment, for by ouermuch galpyng and reachyng bywardes, the Cotilidons may be broken, and so the fea-
ature to peryshe.

Item, ouermuch famine or hunger and also sharpe and feruent sickenesse maye be the cause thereof, as the pestilence, apostume in the brest, and sodayne palsy,

The second booke. Fol. lxxxv.

palsye, the falling sicknesse. &c. Also
ouer much dronkenness, and excesse fee-
dyng and surfettyng, by the which the
byrth is suffocate and strangled in the
belly, and the foode corrupt for lacke of
due digestion.

Item, if the birth be sicke by any out-
warde or inwarde cause, or yf the Se-
condine in the which the featur is con-
teyned, do breake before his tyme, and
the humours and waters of the same
flowe issue forth, causing the place to be
styppery, and so the birth to slide away
vntymely: Or if the mother haue taken
very great cold, or ouer great heat, whi-
che weakueth both mother and chylde.

And therefore ought women with
chylde to excheue much bathing or go-
ing to the hot houses in their teemyng,
for that may do hurt thre wayes.

Fyrste, that it kyndelety or enflameth
the ayre or breath conteyned in the bo-
dye, and so stypfeth the chylde, & some-
tyme the mother to.

Secondly, that it relaxeth, dissolueth, &
looseth

looseth the Cotilidons, and so maketh the birth to issue forth. Thirdly, that the vtter heate of the bath, encrease the inwarde heate of the body: In so much, that the birth not beyng able to sustayne and abide the heate, naturally proceadeth for refrigeration and cooling: but in the time or about the time of labour, she maye vse bathes, as I declared before, for the redyer and more expedite delyueraunce.

Cause of aborcement by mutation of the weather.

Item, the intemperancie and mutation of the ayre and weather, maye be cause of aborcement. For (as *Hypocrates* writeth) Whensoever the Wynter is hot and moyste, and the spryng tyde after colde & drye, such women in that spring tyde maye sone and of a light cause haue aborsment: Or yf they aborce not, yet they shalbe deliuered with great payne and the birth shalbe very weake & sickelye, so that it shall dye strayght, or yf it dye not by and by, it shal proue but very slenderly. The cause of the which thing is this.

For when that suche wynteryng chaunceth, the hoate and moyste weather heateth and moisteth the womans body, and by that the bodye is opened, vnlosed, & resolued, no lesse then though she were euery day bathed, and vppon this when the springe tyde commeth, if it be colde and dry, finding the body open and vnlosed after suche sorte, the colde entereth and pearceth the bodye the soner and the more vehemently, and the byrth feelyng the sodaine colde and chaunge of weather, pineth away, and dieth in the Mothers belly, or anone after it is deliuered, or yf it lyue, it lyketh not, nor proueth not, and great payne shall it be to kepe life in it.

Item, aborcement may happen by ouer muche styrryng of the body in labouryng, daunsyng, or leapyng, or by some fall or thrust against some wall, or beating, or by some sodain anger, feare, dread, sorowe, or some sodayne and vnlookedfor ioy. Thus haue I rehearsed all the causes of the whiche moste commonly

The seconde booke.

monly maye ensue abozcement or vntymely byrth, the whiche no doubt is much more grieffe and payne to the woman, then the very naturall labour, for such thynges as chaunce to man or woman contrary to nature, or before nature doth require it, is farre greater grieffe, then the same happenyng and commyng in his due season.

* Signes whereby ye may foresee abozcement.

Tokens to
foresee a
bozement.



When the woman shall labour before her tyme, these signes are wont to go before. First her brestes which before were hole, sounde, & full, shall begin to waxe lesse, to fall, and to flagge, and then euer for the most part abozcement foloweth. But if it be so that she go with two children at once, if one of the brestes swage, whiche before was in good lyknyng, the other remaynyng sounde and safe, then loke of what side the breste is of, and the chylde of that syde is in peryll. Wherefore Hipocrates wryteth, yf the ryght breast flake or flagge, the masculine or
male

male byrth is in peryll, if the left, the female byrth, because that for the moſte part when there be two at once, the one is masculine, and the other feminine, the man lieth in the right ſyde, and the woman in the left moſt commonly.

Alſo another ſigne of aboꝛcement is, when the woman hath great paynes and dolours of the Matrix, and that ſhe begin to waxe red in the face, and all partes of the body to ſhake and tremble, as though it were in a feuer, or the palſey in the head. Item when ſhe feeleth great ache in the inner part of the eyes toward the braynes, the reſt of the body taken as it were with a werynes without any outward apparent cauſe, why theſe thinges portende and ſignifie aboꝛcement to be at hande, ſpecially if at the ſame time the flowres iſſue alſo.

Item, yf the womans body do ſwell and inflate with a certayne hardeneſſe or ſtyfeneſſe, and that ſhe feele ſitches, and as it were ventofitie or wynde, runnyng from one ſyde of the bodye

The seconde booke.

to the other, and yet the belly notwithstanding, beyng nothyng the more ponderous or wayghtie, and that the same inflation do persist and continue any whyle, the woman takyng and eatyng suche thynges whiche haue vertue to discusse and vanquishe ventositie and wyndynesse, this thyng I saye doth betoken peryll of aborcement through ventositie and inflation, and that chiefly about the thirde or fourth moneth after the conception.

Thus haue I sufficiently declared euident and sufficient signes, whereby may be prouyded and foreseene the aborcement before it come. Nowe wyll I shewe you the remedies wherby it may be auerted and let.

Remedies
whereby to
auoyde a-
borcement.

The chiefe remedy to auoyde aborcement is, to shun all such thinges which may be cause of it, the whiche I haue competently entreated of already, but yf ye feare aborcement, because that the mouth of the matrix be ouer ample and large,

large, then must ye vse suche thynges, whose operation is to contrahē, constrainē and bring together, as Bathes, Fumigations, Dyntmentes, Plasters, Odours, and suche lyke, of the whiche I haue spoken before, and such thinges the whiche repressē and stynte the flow-ers flowyng ouer muche after the birth.

Agayne, yf ye feare this peryll, because the mouth of the Matrix is moyst and slippery, other because that the cotilidons be replete and fulfylled with viscos humours, and with inflations or ventosities, then may ye defend it by vsyng of such thynges whose qualities be to purifie, clense, exicate, or drye, and to repressē ventosities, whereof also we haue made mention here before.

Howbeit, in all this matter, let not to make some expert Phisition of your counsaile, yf ye may haue such one, for because that many such thinges come, and not all by one way or meane.

And yf ye doubtē peryll forbecause

The second Booke.

that the matrix or other places about
be infected, exulcerated, or apostumate,
or hauyng the stone or strangury, and
suche other thynges, then aske and vse
the aduice of some well learned medi-
cine, and he shall shewe you howe all
thynges shalbe recured.

If agayne ye feare aborcement be-
cause the partie is very weake and low
brought, then let her feede on such thin-
ges the whiche moysten and nouryshe
wel, or fatten the body, as Capons flesh,
Byrd, Lambe, yongue Geale, Partridge
and such other.

Agayne, if the woman be taken with
any sharpe and fell disease, then let her
be cured of the same as shortlye as can
be, with such thinges the which apper-
tayne to the curyng of such disease, or if
she haue susteyned any long famine or
hunger, then let her be fedde with good
meates and drynkes moderately taken,
and yf she haue surfetted by ouer much
eatynge and drynkyng (as nowe a
dayes most commonly people do) then
let

let her abstayne for a time, and if it may be conuenientlye done, let her receyue some easy and gentle medicine, whiche maye alleuiate and lyghten her of her surfettyng burthen, especially by vomitting, for the whiche purpose, geue her halfe a pynt of water luke warme, wherin hath ben sodden two sponesfuls of clarified honny, and then afterwarde yf it come not of it selfe, with her fynger or with a fether put into her throte, let her prouoke her selfe to vomite.

Nowe yf it be so that the woman abounde in bloudde, then shall it be very good a litle to let her blood, both for her selfe, and also for the birth, whiche thowwe ouer muche aboundaunce of it, myght happen to be suffocated & strangled, of the whiche thyng also I haue spoken largely before.

Furthermore, yf the woman feare aboꝛsement, by reason of continuall cough, or ouermuche vomite and parbreakyng, or the fluxe, or of the disease called *Tenasmus*, or of ouermuche issuyng

The second Booke.

of bloud, whether it be by the nose, or other partes of the body, aske the aduice of a Physicion for remedie, if for the fragilitie, tendernesse, and bracke of the secundine, she feare this aborcement, for because that in this case the secundine shall not be able to holde and contayne the birth. As for this, there is no other medicine to defende it, but only that the partie take heede that she hurt not her selfe by ouer much mouyng or stirryng, as by labouryng, daunsyng, runnyng, standyng, faste goyng, or carryng of ponderous and wayghtie thynges, or lyftyng of the same. And to be short, let her with all warynesse take heede and be diligent that she excheue and abstayne from all such thynges the whiche myght cause and induce aborcement.

* Of dead byrthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, and by what meanes it may also be expelled.

Cap. ix.

Ishalbe nowe conuenient for vs to speake of dead birthes, howe it shalbe knowen that they be dead, and howe they may be expelled from the mother.

Signes to know whether the child be dead in the mothers wombe.

* Signes then that the birth is dead in the Mothers wombe, be these.

- i. First, yf the mothers brestes do suddenly flake, as I touched before.
- ii. If it moue it selfe no more, beyng wont before to styre.
- iii. If when the Mother turneth her from the one side to the other, she feele it falling from thone side to the other like a stone or a dead wayght.
- iiii. If her belly and Nauyll begyn to waxe colde, which before was wont to be temperately hotte.
- v. If any stynkyng and fylthy humours flowe from the Matrix, and chiefly after some fell disease.
- vi. If the womans eyes waxe hollow & that her colour chaunge from whyte to swart and dunne colour, and that her eyes and nose waxe astonyed, and haue

The second Booke.

haue not their right vse, and her lippes
Ware Wanne.

vii. If beneath the Nauell and about
the secrete partes she feele great throng
& payne, the colour of her face chaunge-
yng into worse and worse, otherwyle
then it was wont to do.

viii. If she haue appetite to eate suche
thynges which be agaynst nature, and
not wont to be eaten or dronken.

ix. If she be in her sleepe vexed with
bayne and terrible dreames.

x. If she be payned continuallye with
the strangurye, or that she enforce her
selve muche to the stoole, & with all her
power, and yet cannot do any thyng.

xi. If her breath begin to stynke, the
whiche thyng lyghtly happeneth two
or thre dayes after the byrth be dead.

xii. If her handes put into very warme
water, and then layde on the womans
belly, and the childe stirre not, is a signe
that it is dead.

Of all these signes nowe, the more
that come together of them at one
tyme

tyme and in one person, the surer may ye be that the birthe is dead, the whiche beyng once dead, all diligence must be hadde that it may be expelled out of the womans body.

But here must ye see againe whether it may be expelled, the Mothers lyfe saued or no, for sometyme it chaunceth that the Mother dyeth withall, and sometymes the Mother doth well and prospereth.

Whether the Mother shalbe in peryll withall, or no, by these thynges shall ye knowe. If the woman beyng in the labour slowne or feare, as though she were in a traunce: if her remembraunce fayle her, and she waxe feeble and scant able to moue or stirre her selfe, yf she (called with a loude voyce) can answer nothyng at all, or els very little, and that very softly, as though her voyce began to fayle her: if she be inuaded or taken among in the labouryng with conuulsion or shrynkelyng together: if she refuse or cannot broke meate:

yf

To knowe
whether the
mother shall
be in peryll
or no.

The second Booke.

if her pulces beate very fast, the Which signes when ye see in the woman labouryng, it is an evident token that she shall not lyue long after her deliuerance, wherefore commit the cure of her to the handes of almyghtie God: but if none of these signes do appeare, then haue good hope, for the woman shall do well, the byrth beyng once departed: wherefore geue all diligence to the expulsion of it, that the woman maye be deliuered of this dead burthen, the whiche thyng maye be done by two wayes, eyther by medicines expulsyue, or els by certayne instrumentes made for the nonce.

Two menes
to expel dead
byrthes.

fumigation

First without instrumentes, with this fumigation. Take eyther the houe or dongue of an Ass, and put it on coles, and let the woman receyue the fume vnderneath.

¶ Another.

Take the skynne of an Adder, Myrr, *Castorium*, Bismstone, *Galbanum*, *Oppoponacum*, Madder that the Dyers occupie, Pygeons dongue, or Hawkes dongue, beate al these to powder, & temper them with Dre gal, & make pylles of it, eche the quantitie of a sylberde nutte, and then put one after another

another in the coales, and receyue the fume thro-
rowe a pipe or conduite made for that purpose
into the priuities.

Another, take *Encense*, *Oppoponacum*, *Galbanum*,
Sulphur, of eche lyke much, beate them toge-
ther, and temper them with *Oxe gall*, and make
pilles of them, and then of the same make fumi-
gations, as befoze.

A potion for the same purpose, take *Asa fetida*,
halfe a dram, of *Rue* thre drams, of *myrr* two
drams, and beate them to powder, and geue to
the woman at eche tyme a dram of this powder
with whyte wine, or with water in the whiche
Sauine is sodden.

Another, take *figges*, *fenegreke*, *Oygannie*,
and seeth them in water, the whiche geue vnto
the woman to drinke, for this drinke wyll en-
gender lubzicitie and slippernes in the nether
partes, and vse also some of those thinges which
haue bertue to prouoke the byrth, whereof we
entreated befoze.

Item, certayne pessaries or suppositaries con-
cernyng the same, take *Gumme*, *Ammoniacke*,
Oppoponacum, *Heliborus niger*, *Staphisagre*, *Aristolochia*
longa, and *Colocinthis* without his kernelles, beate
all these thynges together, temperyng them
with *Oxe gall*, and also with the iuyce of freche
Rue, then make a pessary of wollen, & annoynt
and wette the pessarie with the same, conuay-
ing it into the secreete places.

Item another, make a pessarie of wollen, of
the length and thiknes of a finger, and dippe
it

Sulphur

Sauine

Pessaries

The seconde booke.

it in the iuyce of Rue in the whiche is dissolued a quantitie of Scammonie, and do with that pessarie, as befoze.

Item, take *Aristolochia rotunda*, Sauine, Garden Cresses, of eche lyke muche, beate them to powder, and temper them with Oxe gall, with this annoint a pessarie made and ordered as befoze is spoken of.

Item, yf the woman drinke the mylke of another woman, it wyll styre and expell the byrth.

Item, take of the iuyce of Dittayne, or of the powder of the roote of the same hearbe two drams, and geue the same to drinke to the woman with wine, except she be in great heate, for then shall ye geue it her with luke warme water, and this shall expell the dead byrth without any perill of the Mother.

Item, take of Myrthe foure drammes, of Cinamome, Galbanum, Castorium, of eche two drams, of Oppoponacum, one dramme, all those beaten and tempered together with Oxe gall, make pylles of them, waying eche of them a dramme, and with the fume of those, perfume the nether partes, by this vapour the dead birth is brought forth, inflation and suffocation of bloud is expelled.

Item, take of water Minte, Sothernwood, Muggewort, of eche a handfull, of Asphaltum halfe an ounce, of Madder, two ounces and an halfe, of Camomell, Horehound, Fenegreke, of eche two ounces, seeth all these thynges together in
rayne

womans
milk

cinamome

rayne water, in the which let the woman bathe her selfe, then take of Hense grease and Duckes grease, of eche foure drammes, to the whiche ad two ounces of oyle of Dill seede, with this oyntment annoynt the womans head commyng out of the bathe, then take Date stones and beate them to powder a dram and an halfe, with a scruple of Safran tempered together with whyte wyne, the whiche let her immediately drinke after she come forth of the bathe.

Item, take *Oppoponacum*, and make thereof a pessarye the quantitie of a synger, conuey it into the priuities, this expelleth the dead byrth.

Item, take of *Galbanum* a dramme or somewhat lesse, of Goates mylke an ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, in the whiche the *Galbanum* beyng dissolued, geue it to the woman to drinke.

Item, a plaster for the same. Take *Galbanum*, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Motherwort, and of this make a plaster by putting to of waxe a certayne quantitie, then take a linnen cloth of such length and bredth, that it may couer all the belly vnder the nauell to the priuities, from one syde to the other, on this cloth sprede this plaster of the thicknes of a strawe, and lay it to the belly.

Item, take the Triacle whiche is called *Dissessarum*, and geue of it to the woman for to drinke, and it wyll expell the dead byrth.

But yf all these medicines profite not, then

must

(119 AND 7)

of the priuities

The seconde booke.

musse be vsed more seuerer and harde remedies, with instrumentes, as hokes, tongues, and such other thynges made for the nonce. And fyrst the woman musse be layde a long vpright, the middle part of her body lying hier then all the rest, companyed of women assisting her about, to comfort her, and to kepe her downe, that when the byrth is plucked out, she rise not withall. Then let the Midwyfe annoynt her lefte hande with the oyle of whyte Lillies, or other that may make it soople and smothe, and holding out her fingers hitting together her hand, let her put it into the Matrix to feele and perceyue after what fashion the dead byrth lyeth in the Mothers wombe, so that she may the better put in hokes and such other instrumentes to plucke it out withall.

If it be so that it lye the head forwarde, then fasten a hooke eyther vppon one of the eyes of it, or the roose of the mouth, or vnder the chin, on one of the Shoulders, whiche of these partes shall seeme moste commodious and handsome to take it out by, and the hooke fastened, to drawe it out very tenderly for hurtynge of the woman.

But if it lye the feete forwarde, then fasten the hooke on the bone aboue the priuie partes, or by some ribbe, or some of the backe bones, or of the brest bones, and when this hooke is thus fastened, the Midwife may not by and by drawe and plucke at it, but holdyng it in her lefte hande

hande, let her with her ryght hande fasten another in some other parte of the byrth ryght agaynst the fyrst, and then tenderly let her draw both together, so that the byrth may proceade and come forth on both sydes equally, mouyng it from one syde to another, tyl ye haue gotten out altogether, and nowe and then to helpe it in the comyng forth with the foresynger well annoynted, yf it chaunce to sticke or to be lette any where: and as it commeth forth, alwaye to remoue the hookes farther and farther on the dead byrth.

Agayne, yf it chaunce that one of the handes onely of the byrth do appeare, and that it can not conueniently be reduced and returned bpwarde agayne, by reason of the narrownesse of the place, then bynde it with a linnen cloth that it slyp not bp agayne, and then to plucke it outwarde vntyll such tyme that the hole arme be out, and then with a sharpe knyfe cut it of from the body: and euen so do yf both handes appeare fyrste at once, or one legge or both, yf they cannot be returned backe to be otherwyse taken out conuenientlye. As ye cut the armes from the shoulders, so lykewyse cuttynge the legges from the thyghes, for the which purpose the Chirurgions haue meete instrumentes made for the nonce, with the which such legges and armes may sone be cut frō the body. These partes beyng once resecte and cut from the bodye, then turne the rest, so that it maye easelye proceade, with as lyttle payne to the mother as

The second Booke.

may be.

If it be so that the chyldes head be so swollen by inflation, swelling, or resort of humours, that it wyl not conveniently issue out that narrow places: Then let the Mydwyfe with a sharpe penknife cut open the head, that the humours conteyned in it may issue and runne forth, and so the head to waxe lesse, able to be plucked out: But yf it be so, that not by any suche casualtie the head be bygge, but onelye of a naturall growth, then muste the head be broken in pieces, and the partes euermore taken forth with such instrumentes, as the Chirurgions haue readye and necessarye for suche purposes.

Agayne, yf that after the head were come forth, yet the brest part woulde not folow for greatnesse: Then must ye breake and cut lyke wyse that part, vnto suche tyme that it may be had forth. And euen so lyke wyse yf all the reste of the body should be so swollen that it woulde not proceade ne come forth, then must it lyke wyse be broken in peeces, and so had forth.

ffarthermore, yf by chaunce or disease it come to passe, that the mouth of the Matrix be exulcerate or appostumate, so that the passage bee made the narrower by that meanes, the dryer and the more contract: then must ye fyyst study and endeuour you to soople and ease the places by oyles and other greses, suche as I spake of sufficiently before in the fourth Chapter, with bathes and fumigations.

Also

Also yf the dead byrth come sydelonge, then muste ye do what maye be done to conuerte and turne it to such fashion, that it may most easely be brought forth. The Matrix and other secretes must be annoynted, perfumed, and vapoured with such thinges the which may make it more ample and large. If it can not be thus had forth whole, then let it be cut out by peece meale, as is before spoken of. And yf after this deliuerance the flowres issue ouer vehemently, then vse such thynges as haue vertue to restrayne them, of the whiche I haue spoken in the. vi. Chapter before.

But contrary to all this, yf it chaunce that the woman in her labour dye, and the chylde hauyng lyfe in it: then shal it be meete to kepe open the womans mouth, and also the nether places, so that the chylde may by that meanes both receaue and also expell ayre and breath, which otherwyle myght be stopped, to the destruction of the chylde. And then to turne her on the lefte syde, and there to cut her open, and so take out the chylde. They that be borne

after this fashion are called Cesaes, for be-

cause they be cut out of theyr mothers

belly: wherupon also the noble

Romayne Cesar the fyrste

toke his name.

The second Booke.

In the last Chapter of this booke be hriefly recited certayne experte medicines which be most requisite to the chiefe purpose entended in this presente booke. Chap. r.

As much as the principall entent and ende of this booke is, to shewe the meanes and medicines, whereby the womans labour may be made the more easy: Therfore here I wyll compendiously set forth certayne medicines, oymntes and emplasters, such as shalbe sufficient and mooste requisite to that purpose, and suche agayne as hath ben well experimented and practysed: The which also it shalbe convenient (for them that may) alwayes to haue in a readynesse agaynste theyr tyme of neede. For although that nature be the chiefe and headde doer in all this busynesse, (as in conception, bearyng, and the byrth:) yet notwithstanding, medicines many tymes do helpe, ayde, and fortifie nature, beyng somtyme impedit and let, yea, impotent and not able to do her office as shoulde appertayne.

When the tyme then of the womans labour is come, yf she labour long and paynefully, and yet the byrth do not proceade: then for the more expedite and quicke delyueraunce, geue her of this medicine folowynge.

Take of the finest Cinamome that may be chosen

The seconde Booke. Fol. xcvi.

chosen.iiii. drammes, and with a sharpe knyfe fyrst shred it in very small peeces, and then beat it to very fine powder.

Item of Saffron dried by the fyre tyll it be blacke, of *Cassia lignea*, fine Reubarbe, Sauiue dried, Myrre, of eche of these seuen scruples, of pure muske. xvi. graynes, euery of these simples exquisitely by them selues powdered, and then perfectly myxed in one, with. vi. oz .vii. droppes of Maluesey, temper the hole masse into lyttle roundels oz trochiskes, eche waying a dram. And in tyme of neede at the womans labour, geue her hardly the wayght of .vi. d. of these trochiskes beaten into fine powder, with foure spoonefulles of Slope water, and other foure of good wine secke.

This medicine is not onely profitable at this tyme to prouoke the byrth, but also is notably good to expell the after byrth, oz any other suche lyke matter in that place, hauynge neede of expulsion.

Item, yf nede do so require, it shalbe verpe expedient to haue this emplaster folowynge, in a redynesse, the whiche sped abroad vpon a linnen cloth, either els vpon lether, and so applyed to the bottome of the bellye in as large maner as maye be, dilateth and openeth the poores of that partes, amplifieth, enlargeth & dissolueth them, whereby that that is contayned in the bellye fyndeth the freer issue, to the lesse greuaunce of the mother.

Take of *Emplastrum de Melliloto*, of *Diacbilon*, of *Oxyroton*,

The second Booke.

of eche two ounces, of the rootes of *Asarum*, of wylde Reppe dryed, the leaues of *Bemioym*, of toasted Cummin, of eche two dragmes, of good *Castorium*, iii. dragmes, of the oyle of *Dyll* one or two sponefulles: such of these as are to be poudered, beate them fyne, and then ouer a soft fyre temper them altogether perfectly.

Item, the same emplaster may serue to be layde ouer all the bottome of the belly and the priuie passage, to prouoke and drawe forth the latter or hynder byrth yf nede be: But yf that be not strong enough, then laye to this plaster folowing, which is of much more efficacie, force, and strength.

Take of *Galbanum*, *Ammoniacum*, *Serapinum*, *Myrrhe*, of eche an ounce, of *Colloquintida*, *Heleborus niger*, of eche two drams, of *Castorium*, *Pirethrum* and *Storax liquida*, of eche three drams, of *Turpentine* and *Petroleum*, of eche foure drams. First ouer a softe fyre temper the *Turpentine*, *Petroleum*, and *Storax liquida*, together, then thereto adde *Colloquintida*, *Heleborus*, *Castorium* and *Pirethrum*, beyng first well and finely beaten to powder: after put to the *Galbanum*, *Ammoniacum*, *Serapinum* and *Myrrhe*, beyng first dissolued in good *Maluesey*, and so take it from the fyre, and labour it with your handes. This plaster is of great effect to prouoke the after byrth.

Item vnset Leekes stamped and fryed with butter, and so layde plasterwyle to the belly serueth well for the same.

Item, the leaues or flowres of *Mary golde* dronke with white wyne, expelle the afterbirth.

Also

The second booke Fol. xcviij.

Also the sayde leaues and flowres dyed, and at tyme of nede, kyndeled with a ware candle, and the fume therof receaued vnderneath into the priuie part, prouoketh out meruelously the after byrth.

Item a comfoztable poction, to be taken after the deliuerance of the chyld.

Take of the swetest garden Myntes, grene or dye, of the leaues of Bawme grene also or dye, of the leaues of *Maioram*, the rootes of fenell the pyth take out, the flowres of Buglos, of Rosemary, of Ruds, of Borage, and of dyed red Rose leaues, of eche of these halfe a handfull, moze or lesse as it pleaseth you, of Cloues and Mase brosed a lyttle, the weyght of two pence, of Cinamome bredde in small portions the wayght of .vi. grotes, knyrt al these together in a cloute or lyttle linnen bagge, and hange the same bagge in a quarte of Borage water the space of a daye and a nyght: then take out the sayde bagge, and reserue the water, of the whiche take one halfe, and the other halfe of pure wyne Secke, or els Muscadel: and beyng myxt togeather, put thereto a lyttle of the conserue of Barberics, conserue of Borage flowers, conserue of Rosemary flowres, and drynke hereof euerye daye the space of foure or fyue dayes, at once foure sponefulles of the water, and other foure of the foresayde wyne. And this potion shall both comfozt the woman, and allo helpe greatly to the expulsion of all noysome thynges to be expelled.

The seconde Booke.

And here it is worthy to be noted, that where as it is a common blage to geue often to womē in theyr chylde bed caudels of Otemeele, thynkyng and saying therby the woman to be scoured: whereas in deede the sayde Otemeele is a notable bynder and dryer. Therfore ye shall vnderstand, that the ryght vse therof is, to geue it to suche as haue alreadye ben well and sufficiently scoured and clenfed from their after birth, and other thynges to be looked for in this tyme and case: but yf the woman be not sufficiently purged already, then geue her no Otemeele caudels, ne other thynges that may bynde.

And thus I make an ende, praying the women readers hereof, to accept and suffise themselves with these fewe medicines here in this Chapter mencioned, and often by me and other practised. The which thyng yf they shall do so, it shall (no doubt) be occasion to me the soner to retake this matter in hande agayne, and to refreche and furnyche the same with newe and much more excellent experiences then hath ben yet hytherto read or sene in any booke, concerning such matters.

And as touchyng the aboue Trochiskes and emplasters descrybed here in this place, ye shall fynde them alwayes ready made in Boucklersbery in London.

In this first Chapter of the thyrde Booke
is fyrst declared the matters therein conteyned,
and then howe the Infant newly borne
must be handeled, nouryshed and
loked to. Chap. i.



In the second booke
we haue sufficient-
lye and at length
declared the ma-
ners, fashions and
diuersities of bir-
thes, with the daū-
gers and perylls
often chaunsing to

What is to
be done
when the
chylde is
borne.

the Women at theyr labours, and after
the same. And now here in this thyrde
booke shalbe entreated what is to be
done to the infant borne. And how to
chose a Nurse, & of her office. With ma-
nyfolde medicines, & remedies agaynst
sundry infirmities, whiche effsones
happen to Infantes in theyr infansye.

Then after that the Infant is once come to
lyght, by and by the Nauyll muste be cut three
fyngers breadth from the belly, and so knyt by,
and let be strued on the head of that that remay-
neth, of the powder of Bole armeniacke, and
Sanguis draconis, *Sarcocola*, Myrre, and Cummin, of
eche lyke muche beaten to powder, then vpon
that

The first Booke.

that bynd a peece of woll, dypped in oyle Olive that the powder fall not of. Some vse fyrste to knyt the Nauyll, and after to cut it so much, as is before rehearsed.

And farthermore some saye, that of what length the reste of the Nauyll is left, of the same length shal the chyldes tonge be, if it be a man child. Itē *Auicenna* saith, that diuers things may be knowen by markyng of the chyldes Nauyll: For (as he sayth) when the woman is deliuered of her first chyld, then beholde the Nauyll of the chyld: which if in that part of it, which is next vnto the body it haue neuer a wrinkle, it portendeth and doeth signifie perpetuall from thenceforth sterilitie or barrennes. And yf it haue any wrinkles in it: then so manye wrinkles, so many children shal the woman haue in time to come. Also some ad to this & say, that if there be lyttle space betwene these wrinkles in the nauil, the shal ther be also little space betwene the bearyng of the children: if much, it signifieth long tyme betwene the bearyng of them: but these sayinges be nether in the Gospell of the day, ne of the nyght.

Nowe

Nowe to retorne to our purpose, when that the Nauyll is cut of, and the rest knyt vp: annoynt all the chyldes bodye with the oyle of A. corns, for that is singularly good to confirme, stedfast, and to defende the body from noysome thynges, which maye chaunce from without, as smoke, colde, and suche other thynges: whiche yf the Infante be greued withall straight after the birth, beyng yet verye tender, it shoulde hurte it greatly.

After this annoyntyng, washe the Infante with warme water, and with your synger (the nayle beyng pared) open the chyldes nolethrylles, and purge them of the fylthynesse. And also that the Nurse handle so the chyldes sittynge place, that it may be prouoked to pouрге the bellye. And chiefly it must be defended from ouer much colde, or ouermuch heate.

After that the parte extant or the knotte of the Nauyll is fallen (the whiche commonlye chaunceth after the thyrde or fourth daye) then on the reste remaynyng, strew the powder or Ashes of a Calfes houe burnt, or of Snayle Shelles, or of the powder of lead, called red lead, tempered with wyne.

Farthermore, when the Infante is swaddled and layde in Cradell, the Nurse must geue all diligence and hede that she bynd every parte ryght, and in his due place and order, and that with all tenderesse and gentle entreatynge, and not crokedly and confuselye, the whiche also

The thirde Booke.

also must be done oftentimes in the day, for in this is it, as it is in younge and tender ympes, plantes and twygges: the whiche, euen as ye bowe them in theyr youth, so wyll they euer moze remayne vnto age. And euen so the Infant, if it be bound and swadled, the members lyinge ryght and strayght, then shall it growe strayght and vpryght. If it be crokedly handled, it wyll growe lykewyse. And to the yl negligence of many Nourles may be imputed the crokednesse and deformatie of many a man and woman, which otherwyle myght seme as well fauoured as any other.

By the only negligence of Nourles many chylde groweth crokebacked & wyre legged.

Item let the chylde's eyes be oftentimes wyiped and clenched with a fine and cleane linnen cloth, or with silke. And let the armes of the Infant be verie strayght layde downe by the sydes, that they maye growe ryght, and sometyme strokyng the belly of the chylde before the vesicke or bladder, to helpe to ease and to prouoke the chylde to the makynge of water, and when ye lay it in the Cradell to slepe, sette the Cradell in such a place, that neither the beames of the Sunne by day, neyther of the Moone by nyght come on the Infant, but rather set it in a darke and shadowy place, laying also the head euer somewhat hyer then the rest of the body.

And farther, let it be washed twoo or thre tymes in the day, & that anon after slepe, in the winter with hotte water, in the Sommer with luke warm water, nether let it tary long in the water, but vnto such tyme as the bodye begyn
to

to war red for heate, but take hede that none of the water come into the infantes eares, for that should greatly hurt his hearing another day.

Then to be short, when it is taken out of the bath, let it be wyped and dzyed with gentle and soft linnen clothes warmed, and then to laye it on her lappe the backe bywarde, the whiche with her hands let her tenderly stroke and rub, and then to lappe it by, and to swaddell it, and when it is swadled, to put a droppe or two of water into the nosethrylles of it, is very good for the eye syght. And so to lay it to rest.

C Of the Nurse and her mylke: and howe longe the chylde shoulde sucke. Chap. ii.



A S concerning the bringyng by, nouryshmente, and geuyng of sucke to the chylde, it shalbe beste that the mother geue her chylde sucke her selfe, for the mothers milke is more conuenient and agreable to the Infant, then any other womans, and more doth it nourysh it, for because that in the mothers belly it was wont to the same, and fed with it, and therfore also it doth more desyrouslye couet the same, as that with the which it is best acquainted. And to be short, the mothers mylke is mooste hollosomest for the chylde.

The mothers mylke best and most familiar to the chylde.

The third Booke.

chylde, as *Auicenna* writeth, it shalbe sufficient to geue it sucke twyse or thryse in a daye. And alwayes beware ye geue not the chylde to muche sucke at once in this tender age of it, for cloying of it, and least also it loth it: but rather let it haue often of it and lyttle at once, then fewe tymes and ouermuch at once. For sucke as bee ouer cloyed with the mothers mylke, causeth theyr bodye to swell and inflate, and in theyr brine shall it appeare, that it is not ouercome ne concocted or digested in the chylde: whiche thynge yet yf it chaunce, let the Infant be kept fastyng vntyll such tyme as that which it hath receaued already be completely digested.

Item, yf the mothers mylke be some what sharpe or coleryke, let her neuer geue the chylde her brest fastyng. Yf it be so that the mother can not geue the Infant sucke her selfe, eyther for because of sicknesse, or that her brestes be soze, and her mylke corrupted: then lette her chose a holosome Nurse, with these condicions folowynge.

To chose a
good Nurse.

Firste that she be of a good colour and complexion, and that her bulke and brest be of good largenesse. Secondly, that it be not to sone ne to long after her labour, so that it be two monethes after her labour at the leaste, and that (yf it may be) such one which had a man chylde.

Thyrde, that she be of meane and measurable lykynge, neyther to fat ne to leane. Fourthly, that she be good and honest of conuersation, neyther ouer halsty or yrefull, ne to sadde or solome

lome, neyther to fearefull or timorous: for these affections and qualities bee pernycious and hurtfull to the mylke, corruptyng it, and passe forth through the mylke into the chylde, makynge the chylde of lyke condicion and maners. Also that they be not ouerlight and wanton of behauiour. fyfthly, that her brestes be full, and haue sufficient plenty of mylke, and that they be neyther to great, softe, hangyng, and flaggynge, ne to lyttle, harde, or contracte, but of a measurable quantitie.

Also loke vpon her mylke, that it be not blackyshe, blewyshe, grey, or reddyshe, neyther sower, sharpe, saltysh, or brackyshe, neyther thyn and fluy, neyther ouer grosse and thicke, but temperately whyte and pleisant in taste.

And to be short, that mylke is best and mooste to be chosen, of the which a drop beyng mylked softly vpon the nayle of the thombe, holdyng your fynger styll it rolleth not of, neyther flyteth abroade, but yf ye moue your hande a lyttle, it wyll flyde of by and by: but yf when it is mylked on the nayle it spreade abrode, and flyt by and by, then is it to thyn, but yf it cleaue styll when that ye moue a lyttle your hande, then is it to spyse and thicke. The meane betwene both is best.

If it be so that the Nurses mylke be to hot, sharpe, or colericke: then let her neuer geue the chylde sucke, her selfe beyng fastyng.

Sometyme it chaunseth that the mothers or Nurses mylke doeth fayle or decrease, the
which

The conside-
ration of the
Nurses mylke

The third Booke.

Dyuers cau-
ses of the de-
fect or falling
of mylke.

which thyng may come by dyuers causes: as by sickenesse, by disease in the brestes, or by takyng of colde in the same, and so stoppe and cludder the mylke, or for because she lacketh such thynges the which myght engender mylke, other by ouermuch fastyng, hunger & thurst, the which causes muste be well conydered: and then accordyng to that, minister a remedye.

Thynges which do augment and encrease mylke be these.

Lette her vse to eate Parsnyp, eyther the seede or the roote: also the seede or roote of fenyll, sodden in the broth made with Barley or Cicercula, let her eate of that with other meates that she feedeth on.

Item, to eat sheepes brestes and the mylke of them is good.

Item, take an ounce of cowe butter, and dissolue it in warme whyte wyne, the whiche let the Nurse drynke.

Item, booryng vnder the brestes doth well, without scarification.

Item, a plaster for the same of Frankensence, Masticke, and Pitche, layde to the brestes, or vnder the brestes, the skynne fyrste beynge annoynted with oyle, least it shoulde cleaue ouer fast to the place.

Item, it shalbe verye good to rubbe softely with the hande the brestes, or els in bathyng after dynner or supper, to cause some to sucke her breste.

Item, take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes, or of violettes, and myngle with it Husk, Essence,
and

and *Laudanum*, well tempered together, in the same dippe a peece of woll, and clap it to the brestes, and soke them with it.

Item walhe them, and soke them often tymes with wine, in the which is decocte and sodden Mintes, Roses, Violettes, and *Xiloaloes*. Also to eate of the broth in the whiche is sodden a Hen, with Cinamome, Maces, and *Cardamomum*, and also the yolke of an egge.

Item it is good for her to eate frethe Chese and mylke, and to refrayne from all maner of great labour and harde workes.

Also potage made of beane meale, ryce, and bread made of fine flowre, tempered with Milke & Suger, puttyng to it also a quantitie of Fenell seede, or of the leaues, is very good for her.

Item take of Annis seede, of *Siler montanum*, of eche thre drams, of Christall beaten to powder two drams, and as much of Suger, geue her this to drynke about ten dayes, at moynyng, euenyng, and mydday.

Item take of Fenell seede, or the leaues, and of Horehounde, of eche two handfuls, of Annis seede foure drams, of Safron beaten one scruple, also of frethe Butter thre ounces, and seeth all these in sufficient water, makynge hereof a plaster, and the same plaster whilest it is hoate, lay it to the Nurses brest.

Item take of Cummin seede an ounce and an halfe, & of clarified Hony thre ounces, seeth it in fiue pyntes of water altogether put into a newe pot, and let it seeth to the third part, and

The chyldre Booke.

of this decoction geue the Nurse oftentymes to drynke.

Item take of Beetes wel washed one ounce, of Cummin halfe an ounce, of Honye sixe ounces : of these mingled and tempered together, make an electuary, of the whiche let her take both in the moznyng and euenyng, at eche time a sponefull.

Item take two drams of Cryfall beaten into fyne pouder, and deuyde that in foure equall partes : one of these partes geue vnto the Nurse, the space of foure dayes to drynke, with broth made epyther of Cicer, oz elles of peason.

Also all these thynges folowynge, encrease and augment Mylke in the brestes : Annis and Annis seede, Dyll and the seede, Horehounde, *Cardamomum*, freshe Chese, wortes made of olde Chese, Cicer, Cristall beaten to pouder and taken with Hony, Lettuse, Fenel, wine in which Rosemary oz Sauery be sodden.

Companiing
with men coz
rupteth the
Nurses milke

Item to abstayne from venery oz mans company, for if she vse that, it shall spende and consume the Mylke, and make it vnsauery and vnholosome, neyther can the chylde well broke it, but most commonly shall cast it by agayne, because it cannot digest it.

Also it shalbe best that the chylde sucke not of the Mothers breste by and by, as soone as it is borne, but rather of some other womannes, for a day oz two, for because that the creme (as they call it) straight after the byrth, the first day
in

in all women doth thycken and conpile.

Item, yf it chaunce that the Nurse be ouer
soze laxed, or that she be ouer bounde, so that
she take anye medicines to remedye it: then let
another geue the chylde sucke whylest she bee
recovered agayne. And when the chylde is layde
in cradell to be rocked, rocke not to faste, leaste
through ouer much rockyng and styrryng, the
chylde's stomacke turne, and the Mylke there
coꝛrupt foꝛ lacke of rest.

Auisen aduiseyth to geue the chylde sucke two
yeares: howe be it amonge vs moſte common-
ly, they sucke but one yeare. And when ye wyll
weane them, then do it not sodenly, but a little
and lyttle, and to make foꝛ it lyttle pylles of
bread and Suger to eate, and accustome it so,
tyll it be able to eate all maner of meate: and
this shall suffyse foꝛ the education and bryn-
gyng by of infantes at this tyme. Notwith-
standyng dyuers other thynge here are leste
vnspeken of, another tyme God wyllpyge we
shall declare them at large.

Howe long
the chylde
shoulde sucke.

¶ Of dyuers diseases and infirmittes which chaunce
to chyldren lately boꝛne, and the remedies
therefoꝛ. Cap. iiii.



Although there be in ma-
ner infinite diseases which
happen the Infantes, as
wryteth *Hypocrates*, *Galenus*,
As *Rasis*,

Many dis-
eases of Infan-
tes.

The second Booke.

Rasis, Auicenna, and diuers other: yet for breuitie and shortnesse we wyl rehearse here only suche of them whiche moſte commonly happen to the ſame, & that be theſe: exulceration of the gummes, ſtixe of the belly, or ouermuch loſenes of the ſame, the belly harde bounde, the crampe, the coughe and diſtillation of the head, ſhorſe wyndnes, bladders on the tongue, exulceration or clyppping of the mouth, apoſtume in the eares, apoſtume in the brayne, ſwellyng and bolnyng of the eyes, ſkumme or creamie of the eyes, the feuer, knawying in the bellye, the body ſwellyng and puffed vp, often ſneelyng, wheales or bladders of the body, ſwellyng of the coddies, ſwelling of the nauyl, vnſlepyneſſe, yering, appetite to parbreake, fearefulneſſe in the dreames, the mother, iſſuyng out of the fundament gutte, wormes in the belly, chaufyng, the fallying ſickneſſe, the conſumption, the palye, trembling of the partes of the body, the ſtone, goggle eyes.

Howe

The thirde booke. Fol. Ciiij.

* How to cure and to remedy all these, now
will I shewe in order.

First in exulceration of the gummies, are Of exulcera-
tion of the
gummies.
wont certayne pusses and as it were
wheales, to growe on the gummies, or in
the corners of the iawes, the whiche put the
place to much greuaunce, and to remedye this,
it shalbe good that ye with your finger, rubbe
the infantes gummies and the pusses or whel-
kes withall, and then to annoynt the same
gummies with oyntment made of Hens grese,
Hares or Conyes brayne, oyle of Camomell
mixt with Hony, then take water, and in it seeth
Camomell and Dyll, the whiche water beyng
hoate, powre it on the chyldes head, holdyng it a
foote aboue the head.

C Of the fire and ouermuch loosenes
of the belly.

Or this take the seede of Roses, Comin, Soz the fire
in childen.
Annyse, and the seede of Smalage, beate
all these together and make them plaster-
woyse, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

And farther, if that it whiche the infant boy-
deth be of redde or yelow colour, then geue it
to drinke of the sirope of Roses, or of Crabbes,
other els of Pomegranates, tempered with a
little Mynte water.

Item, take the seede of Sorrell, and beate it,
then temper it together with the youlke of a

The thirde booke.

rosted egge, and geue that to the childe to eat, or els take of the same seede brused fyrst, and then seeth it in fayre running water, thereof let the chylde drinke two or thye tymes the day.

Item, take a gall, and beate it to pouder, then seeth it in water, with this water, temper Barlye meale, or the meale of *Mellium*, and make a plaster of it, the whiche laye vnto the chyldes belly.

Item, yf that that cometh from the chylde, be whytyshe, then take of Nutmegges the weight of a peny, and of whyte Frankencense a scruple, or the weyght of two pence, the whiche temper with the iuyce of a Quince, and geue it to the chylde to drinke.

Item, take the meale of Barley, temper it with the iuyce of Plantayne, and a little Vineger, and make it plaster wyse, and laye it to the chyldes belly, but beyng fyrst a lyttle boyled together ouer the fyre.

Item, take the iuyce of *Centinodium*, and the whyte of an egge, and temper them together, to the whiche adde the powder of dyed red Roses, the powder of Hematites, Masticke, Frankencense, Sole armeniake, *Sanguis Draconis*, and the riudes of Pomegranate, of all these mixed together make a plaster, and lay it (fyrst warmed ouer the fyre) to the Infantes belly.

Item, to washe the chylde with the water in the whiche be sodden leaues of redde Roses, is very good.

Item, take the iuyce of Camfely, and the iuyce
of

of Plantane the moze and the lesse, and in this put clay of an olde furnise oz Duen, and make of it a plasser, and lay it to the chylde's belly.

C To vnloose the chylde beyng bounde.

If the chylde be so bounde, that it can not long time haue any stoole, then make a suppositarie of Hony sodden till it be hard and massye, and let the suppositary be of the length of your lyttle finger, and the bignesse of two wheate straws bounde together, then dippe it into oyle, and conuey it into the chylde's fundament.

Item, lyke wyse ye may make a suppositar of the stalke and the roote of Beates, oz els of the roote called Oresse oz flouredeluce roote, made of the quantitie befoze spoken, and conuayed into the sitting place of the childe.

Item, to geue to the Infant as much Hony, as a pease to drinke, and to rubbe the belly a litle, and to souple it with a peece of wooll dipped in oyle, oz dipped in Bulles gall, and layde to the Nauell.

Item, ye may geue vnto the Nurse a medicine whiche hath vertue to vnbynde and loose, and the next day after let the chylde sucke her, and it wyll loose also the chylde.

Item, take of smail Malloves, of great Malloves of eche an handful, of fenegreke & Lineseede of ech an ounce, of Holpocke two ounces, of figges the number of .x. seeth all these together in water, and then stampe them in a mortar, and

The thirde booke.

put vnto it of Butter and of Hennes grese of eche two ounces, and of Safran one scruple, and make a paster of it vppon a linnen cloth, of the thicknes of a straw, and lay it to the chyldes belly, a day and a nyght.

If this moue not the belly, then take of Aloes, Cicotrine one dram, of *Eleborus* both *niger* and *albus*, of eche .xv. graynes, beate these to powder, then temper them with thre sponesfuls of the iuyce of Malwort, or of Dre gall, in this licour dippe woll, and laye it to the Nauell the bredth of a hande, and bynde it to the place.

Item, take the iuyce of Malwort and of Mill meale, & seeth those together, tyll they be thicke, then make a plaster therof, and lay it to the belly beneth the Nauell.

C Remedy for the crampe or distention of the members.

If it chaunce that the infant be taken with the disease called the crampe, the which for the most part commeth of indigestion, and of the weakenes of the powre attractiue, and specially in such chyldren the which be very fat and moyste, then shall ye annoynt all along the backe of the infante with the oyle of blewe flowredeluce, or els white Lillies, eyther the oyle of Rue.

If the crampe take the childe whylest it stretcheth forth the armes, legges, and other members (as we be wont in gaping or yawning) then
let

The thirde booke. Fol. Cvi.

let it be bathed and washed in water, in the
whiche prime Roses, Couflappes, or the flowres
of Camomell be sodden, or els annoynt it with
the oyle of Violettes, and the oyle of Sweete Al-
mons tempered together, and if the chylde be in
great heate, annoynt him with the oyle of Vio-
lettes, or with oyle Olive, tempered with a little
whyte waxe, and also powre on the childes head
the oyle of violettes.

* Remedy for the coughe and distillation,
or Catarrhes of the head.

Sometymes the chylde is sore en-
combred with the coughe, & with
distillation or running of humours out
of the head, to the nose, the mouth, and
the brest, the which ye shal remedy thus.

First powre warme water on the chyldes
head, holdyng it a foote and a halfe from the
chyldes head, and so do continually the space of
halfe an houre, and in the meane whyle put a
little Honye on the chyldes tonge to chawe by-
pon, then put your fynger into the chyldes
mouth, and depresse or holde downe the inner-
moste part or the roote of the tongue next to the
throte, to prouoke the chylde to vomyte, and to
boyde the grosse and viscouse humours whiche
be cause of this yll.

Item, take Gumme Arabicke, Gumme Dra-
gagant, the seede of Quinces, the iuyce of Ly-
corise, and Suger penedium, all this beaten to-
gether,

The thirde booke.

gether, geue euery day to the chylde a quantitie with Mylke newe mylked.

Item, make Almonde mylke, with Almondes blanchéd, and only the iuyce or water of fenell, whereof when it is well sodden, let the chylde eate or drinke mornyng and euenyng, or anye other tyme of the day.

And yf it be so that the cough haue exasperat and made rough the tongue, and the rooffe of the mouth, then take of the seedes of Quinces two sponefulles, bruse them a little, and stype them in warme water the space of two or thre houres, then strayne the viscouse & grosse water from them through a strayner, and that remayneth, frye it together in a frying panne with Suger, *Penicium*, and the oyle of sweete Almons, thereof makyng an electuarium, the whiche geue vnto the chylde to receyue, yf the chylde haue great heate with the cough, then ad vnto the same electuary, the iuyce of a sweete Pomegranate.

Item, agaynst the cough and ouer muche heate, take the seede of whyte Popie and Dragagant of eche two drams, of the seedes of Cowardes foure drams, and beate all these together, and geue at once the weight of foure pence to the childe, with the water in whiche reasons haue ben sodden.

Item, take Reasons, and doyng away the graynes of it, seeth them together with water in a frying panne, so that they burne not to the bottome of the panne, then take it from the fyre
and

and beate it well in a mortar, temperyng therewithall Suger, *Penidium*, and geue of this in the morning and euenyng to the chylde.

Agayne, yf the cough come of a colde cause, then take a little Myrthe beaten to powder, and temper it with a quantitie of warmed Hony, and the oyle of sweete Almondcs, and of this geue vnto the chylde.

Furthermore the Nurse must auoyde all suche thynges, the which may engender cough, as Vaineger, ouermuche salted meates, Cheese, Nuts, & all sharpe thynges. Also she must annoint the chylde's brest with Butter, and with *Dialthea*.

Item, for the cough, take Reasons and frye them in a frying panne, then stampe them in a mortar, and to that adde as muche of Suger *Penidium*, with a little oyle of violettes, and make an electuary of these, and geue to the chylde the mountenaunce of a hasell Nut.

¶ Remedy for short wynde.

Many tymes chaunceth also to Infantes difficultie of brethyng or short windnes, the which to remedy, take Lineseede, and beate it, & geue of it vnto the childe with Hony, but if the disease encrease on the childe, and that the winde pipes in maner seeme stopped, then annoynt well the eares, and al the places about the eares with oyle Olyfe, and also the tongue for to prouoke vomite, and then powze a little warme water into the chylde's mouth to washe it withall, & geue to it a little Lineseede tempered with Honye and beaten, made after
the

The thirde booke.

the fashion of an electuary.

Item, yf the chyldre haue besydes this also the flux, then geue vnto it the Syrope of Myrtys, other els Dates sodden with Mylke and flowre.

* Against weales oz bladders on the tongue.

Item, sometymes happeneth to the chyldren wheales and blisters on their tongues and mouth, whiche thynges commeth of the sharpenesse and eager- nesse of the Nurses mylke, the mouth and tongue of the infant beyng so tender that the least thyng that toucheth it, shal offende it, wherfore besides that, it is great payne to the chyld, thus to be blistered by the eagernes of the milke, it is also very perillous and dangerous, for such wheales which be not ripe and seeme blacke, betoken death, whiche yf they be whyte oz yelowyshe, then they be of lesse peryll.

Agaynst this yll, take violettes and Roses, and seeth them in a little Rose water, and therewith washe the blysters.

Item, take the iuyce of Letuse, the ioyce of
Petie

The second booke. Fol. Cxviii.

Petrie morell, & the iuyce of Purselayne, which when they be well commixt and tempered together, annoynt therewith the whelkes. And yf the foresayde blisters or whelkes be blackish: then adde to the foresayde iuyces, Licorise beaten to powder.

Item yf the same be very moyste, then take Myrthe, Galles, the rine of Frankencense, beate them well together, and temper them with Hony, and annoynte the chylde's tounge there with.

Item, take the iuyce of Mulberies before they be fully ripe, other elles of unripe grapes, whiche is called Uergeus, and with that annoynte the tounge.

Item, it is very good to washe the tounge with red wyne, and then to strewe vpon it the powder of Galles, or els of the barke or rine of Frankencense.

If ye wyll haue a quicker medicine in operation and sharper: then take Bole armeniack, Sulfidum, and Sumach, of eche three drams: also of Galles two drams, of Aloome one dram, all these beate together, and searse them through a searser, and strewe that powder on the blisters.

Item if these wheales be reddishe and cause muche spittle to gather together in that place, then let the Nurse vse such thynges which are moyste and colde, and let her chawe in her mouth very small a fewe fatches, of the which lay on the Infantes mouth and tounge.

Item Amilum or starch tempered together with
Rose

The chyldes Booke.

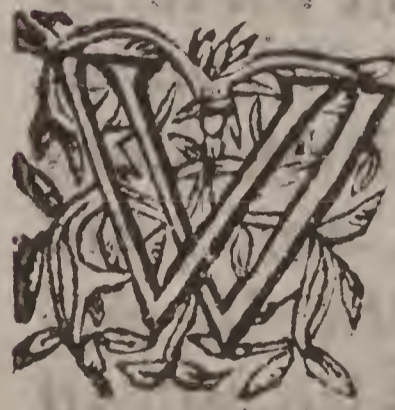
Rose water, & put on the chylds tong, is good.

Item, take the iuyce of Pomegranates, the iuyce of Quinces, or the iuyce of Oranges, and do of this on the chyldes tounge in like maner, but yf the wheales or blisters be some what yellowyſhe, then to these iuyces spoken of before, adde the iuyce of Lettuse and of Purselayne. But yf the wheales seme whytish, then take of Myrre and of Saffran, of eche one dram, of Suger candye two drams, and beate these to powder & lay of it on the wheales and tounge.

C Of exulceration or clefture, chappynge or chynnyng of the mouth.

Sometymes by reason of the hardnes of the Nurses pappes, the chyldes lyppes and mouth be exulcerat, hauyng in maner of cleftes and chinnes in them: and in this case take tozed wooll, and dyp it in the iuyce of Plantaine, or els in Butter molten, or in fresh Hennes grease, every of them beyng warme, and with this annoynt the mouty and lyppes of the chyld.

C Of appostumatation and runnyng of the eares.

 **V**E that humours and matter yssueth out of the eares, which properly commeth of abundant humours in all the bodye, and most specially in the head: then take a peece of wooll, and dyp it in Hony mirte with redde wyne, to the whiche is put also a little
quantitis

quantitie of Alome beaten to powder, or of Safran, then make of the same as it were a tent, and put it in the chyldes eare, & when the tent hath sucked and drawen to it the humours and fylthynes of the eare, then take it out, and put in newe: and yf that the whiche commeth out of the eare be as matter, then take of sodden Hony, and temper it with water, put of it into the eares: or els take the powder of Galles, temperyng it with vineger and do lyke wyse.

But yf the chyld haue great payne and dolour by wyndnes, ventositie, and the humours in this place: then seeth Organny and Myrthe with oyle Dlyse, and so beyng warme, put of it into the eares.

C Of apostumatton in the head.

If there be any apostume engendered in the head, (whiche many tymes chaunseth) the whiche causeth the chekes and eies to be greatly payned, and the eye syght to ware wannyshe or tawnye, then must be applyed such thynges which maye refrigerate and coole the braynes: as, take of the iuyce of Gowardes, and the iuyce of Nyghtshade, iuyce of Purselayne, and temper them with the oyle of Roses, in this dyppe a peece of wooll and lay it to the head, and as often as it waxeth drye dyp it agayne.

The second Booke.

C Of the swelling or bolnyng of the eyes.

A Gaynst swelling and bolnyng of the eyes, take *Licium*, and temper it with womans Mylke, & put of it into the chyldes eyes, and bynd it to the place with a fine and soft linnen cloth, then afterward washe the eyes with water in whiche Camomell and Basill haue ben sodden. Yf that in this swelling the eyes be not redde, nether the browes swollen: then take Myrre, Aloes, Safron, and the leaues of Roses, and temper all these, and stipe them in olde wine, & binde it to the chyldes eyes with some linnen cloth, & into the chylde nose put a quantitie of Ambre dissolved in womans Mylke.

C Of the scumme or whyte of the eye.

A Gaynst the scum or whyte of the eye, which for the moste part happeneth to chyldren through ouer muche crying and wepyng, take the iuyce of *Solatrum*, and droppe of the same into the chyldes eye, and yf by the same chaunce the bayne of the eyes waxe reddishe, or be swollen, then annoynt them with the same iuyce.

C Agaynst immoderate heate, or the feuer.

If the infante bee in great and behemente heate contrary to nature, the which is called a feuer: fyrste it shalbe the Nurses parte to eate and vse suche thynges the whiche coole and moysten.

Also

Also to geue vnto the Infant of these thinges folowynge. The iuyce of Pomegranate, the water of Gourdes, Suger, with a little Camphere mixed herewithall, tempered well together. Item it is very good to prouoke it to sweating.

Item, take of the iuyce of Wormewood, of Plantane, Malowes, and Singrene, and temper them altogether, and seeth them a little on the fyre, in the whiche also mixe Barlye meale, and make a plaster of all these, and lay it to the chyldes breste. Also take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Poplar, and mixte them together with this oyntment beyng colde, annoynt the chyldes forehead, the temples, the armes, the handes about the wystes, and the pulses, and the feete about the ancles.

Item, take of Barly meale, and of dzyed Roses, and powdred, and temper these with the water of Roses, and the water of Endiue, and make therof on the fyre a plaster, the whiche laye to the chyldes brest somewhat warme.

Also as often as the chyld is washed, let it be done with water in whiche is sodden suche thynges, whiche coole: As Letuce, Purclayne, Endiue, Plantayne, and such other.

¶ Against fretting or gnawynge in the belly.

If the chyld be vexed with fretting and gnawing in the belly, the whiche thing ye shall knowe by the immoderate crying of the chyld, and that it turneth from one syde to another with great crying, then shall you take

The thirde booke.

warne water, wherein hath ben sodden La-
uender, Cammin, Fenell seede, or the seede of
Dill, and oyle Olive, tempering them together,
and herein dip a peece of wooll, and therewith
soke the chyldes belly oftentimes.

* Against swelling of the body.



When the chyldes body or any part
therof is swollen & puffed vp, then
take the toppes of Elder tree, and of
Malwort, and seeth them in whyte
wyne, and therein lay the Infant,
specially yf it be not taken with ouer great
heate, but yf so be that with swelling in the
head the belly be swollen also, the take Myrre,
Aloes epaticke, and Saffron, and beate them al-
together, and temper them with the iuyce of
Beanes, and lay it to the chyldes head.

* Agaynst often sneesing.

Sometimes the Infantes be sore troubled
and vexed with often sternutation and
sneesing, whiche thing yf it come of the
apostume in the head, then shal ye minister such
thynges to the head, whiche refrigerate and
coole, whether it be oyles, oyntmentes, iuyces
of the hearbes, or other thinges. If this come
of any other cause then of apostume, then take
Basyll be it greene or dry, and put of the iuyce
or powder of it into the chyldes nose. But yf
this sneesing come and begin with heate, and
that the chyldes eyes seme as they grewe in-
warde for payne therof, then lay to the childes
head

head the leaues of Purslayne, or Cowarde cut in thinne slyces and tempered with the oyle of Roses and Barlye meale, and also the youlke of an egge.

* Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.

THese whelkes if they appeare blacke vpon the body, they signifie peryll of life, and so muche the more, the greater quantitie that there is of them: but yf they seeme whytyshe or reddishe, it is no perill, and may easily be cured. wherfore take the leaues of the red Rose, the leaues of Mirtils, and of *Tamariscus*, and seeth these in water, and in that water, wet a linnen cloth, and soke therewith the whelkes.

Item, lyke wyse it is good to annoynt the same with the oyle of Roses, of Mirtilles, and *Tamariscus*. If the whelkes be whyte or reddishe, then let them be ripe before ye minister any thing to them, and when they be open and begyn to matery, then to clense, purifie, and to dry them beyng ripe and broken. It is verye good to wash the same whelkes with *Mulsium* or *Hydromell*, in which Saltpeter is dissolved. *Mulsium* and *Hydromell* is, water and Houys sodden together.

* Against swelling of the coddex.

MAny tymes chaunseth to chyl dren (thro-
rowe ouermuch crying) swelling about
the coddex, and sometymes burstenesse,

The thirde booke.

and swelling in the inner part of the thyghes, the whiche swelling sometymes cometh by inflammation or great heate, and sometyme with onlye wyndynesse. If it come of wyndynesse, then the coddles will sometymes appeare so styffe as a tabour, and thynne as it were an horne. The remedy for this, is to take a quart of double Beere woort, and therein seeth of the leaues of Bay halfe a handfull, of Rue, a quarter of an handfull, of Fenell, Dyll, and Camomell, of eche a meane handfull, cut and broose all these herbes together, and seeth them from the quart to the pinte, the strayne them strongly from the liquer, in the whiche liquer, seeth so much beaneflowre as may serue to make a plaster, thereto addyng at the latter ende, two or three sponefulles of oyle of Camomell, and lay this plaster hotte to the coddles. If the swelling come of heate, then alay the same with some colde hearbes, such as I haue oftentimes spoken of befoze.

¶ Against swelling of the Pauell.

Also sometymes the chyldes Pauell swelleth, and specially straight after the byrth when it is cut. For this, take Spike celytyke, and seeth it in the oyle of Almondcs, myxed with a little Turpentine, then in this dyppe wooll, and lay it on the place.

But yf so be that this swelling come of ouermuche crying, cough, or of a stroke or fall: Then take bytter Lupines, and the powder of
fayre

sayre olde linnen cloth burnt to powder, and temper these with red wyne, & then in this dyp a peece of towe, and lay it to the Naupill.

* Agaynst vnslleepynesse.

Against vnslleepynesse, that is, when the child is destitute and wanteth his due and naturall rest, all the whyle crying and weeping. For this take two heades (with the seedes therein conteyned) of whyte Poppe, and with one sponesfull of Rose water, & three or foure dropes of Vineger, stampe them in a mortall reasonably, then adde thereto two sponesfulles of womans mylke, and the wayght of an halspeny of Saffron, with halfe a sponesfull of Barlye floure, the which yet stampe a little together agayne, and then laye it in a fine thynne double linnen cloth, and applie it to the forehead from one temple to the other.

Item, geue the chylde to drynke a little of the syrope of Popie. Also to annoynt the temples with the oyle of Popie is very good.

But yf this vnslleepynesse come of the impuritie of the Nurses mylke (as many tymes it doth) then take of the oyle of violettes, and put vnto it a little quantitie of Vineger, and of this liquour droppz oftentymes into the chylde's nolethrylles. Or els take the oyle of Roses, and temper it with the iuyce of Letuse, and therewith annoynt the head and the stomacke of the chylde, and farther, see that the Nurses mylke may be amended.

The chyilde Booke.

¶ Agaynst yeryng or the hyscate.



This yeryng commeth either of colde-
nesse of the stomacke, other els of
ouermuche fulnesse, or for lacke of
meate and emptynes of the stomake
or els by some hotte and colericke
qualitie bytyng bypon the mouth of the sto-
macke.

As often as it commeth by the aboundaunce
of meate, and fulnesse, the remedie is to pro-
uoke it to vomite. If by coldenesse of the sto-
macke, then annoynt the stomacke with the oyle
of Bayes warmed, other els lay to the stomacke
a plaster made of the seede of Wyll, beaten and
tempered with the iuyce of Myntes.

But yf it chaunce by any heate or colericke
qualitie, then take the oyle of Violettes, or of
Roses, the iuyce of Endiue, or of any other
such hearbes the which haue power to infrigi-
date and coole, and temper the same with wo-
mans mylke, and annoynt therewith the chyl-
des stomacke.

And when it proceadeth by defecte and lacke
of meate, or emptinesse of the stomacke, then
geue to the chylde to feede bypon mylke, & other
good holosome thynges to suppe, neyther passe
not greatly though the chylde reiecte and vomit
by agayne that the whiche it receyueth, for so
much euer wyll remayne in the stomacke that
shalbe sufficient to sustayne it, and meanely to
nouryche it.

¶ Agaynst

The thyrde Booke. Fol. Cxiij.

¶ Agaynst often parbreaking by weaknesse and
feblenesse of the stomacke.



¶ Gainst ouermuch parbreaking, beate
foure graynes of Cloues, and geue it
to the chylde to drynke with foure or
fyue sponesfulles of red wine.

¶ Item, take of Masticke, whyte
frankensence, and the leaues of the red Rose,
so much as shalbe sufficient, & all these beaten
together, temper them with the iuyce of Myn-
tes, and make a plaster of it, laying it to the
chylde's stomacke. But yf the chylde's vomiting
be very behement, then put vnto these foresayde
thynges a quantitie of Rose vineger.

¶ Item, take fine meale, and bake it so hot in
an ouen, or els in a fryng panne ouer the fyre
tyll it ware broune, then beate it to powder a-
gayne, puttyng it into vineger, and to these ad
the yolke of an egge harde rosted, Masticke,
frankencense, and Gumme Arabicke, and tem-
per all these with the iuyce of Myntes, makynge
of it a plaster, the whiche laye to the chylde's sto-
macke, and to the chylde's mouth and nose holde
a warme tosse of breade.

¶ Causes of this yll be thre. The first, yf the
chylde haue taken moze mylke then it is able to
concocte and digest. The secoude, yf the Nur-
ses mylke be ouer thinne, waterishe, and fluishe.
The thyrde, yf the same mylke be impure, fe-
culent, and corrupte. These causes prouoke vo-
mite, and speciall ye yf the chylde also haue a

The thyrde Booke.

weake and wateryshe stomacke: wherefoze ye must helpe the Infant after this maner.

Fyrst let the chylde sucke lesse then it dyd before, and then also marke that which the chylde doeth perbrake, whether it sauer sharply lyke vinegre, or that it be whytyshe. For yf it be so: then take of white Frankensence, viii. graines, of dzyed Rue. xx. graines: beate these to powder, and geue it to the chylde to dzyneke, with the syrope of red Roses.

Or els let the Nurse chawc Cimmin, and so put it into the chyldes mouth: Geue also of the syrope of Pomegranates, with the powder of dry Myntes to the chylde.

Take Masticke, *Accatia*, *Xilosaloes*, Galles, whyte Frankensence, tosted bread, of eche lyke much, beate them together, puttyng to of red Roses, and temperyng it with the conserue of Roses, and lay it to the chyldes stomacke.

But yf it so be that the perbrakyng of the chylde sauer not after the fashion of vinegre, but after some other sowre sauer, and that it be not whytyshe, but pale or yelowyshe: then geue it the iuyce of Quinces, and lay this plaster vnto the chyldes stomacke. Take Barlye meale, wylde Mulberies, and *Psidium*, beate all these together, and temper it with Rose water and lay it to the chyldes stomacke.

And furthermore, yf the chyldes stomacke be somewhat wateryshe, and slowe in digestion, then annoynte it with the water of Roses, in the which Muske hath ben disolued, or els the
water

The chyilde booke. Fol. Cxliii.

water of Myrtyles, and geue it to drynke the iurce of Quinces, with a little Cloues and Sugar, or with a scruple of Nutmegges therewith tempered and mixed.

* Agaynst fearefull and terrible dreames.

Also sometyme the chyldren be vexed and vnquieted with fearefull and terrible dreames in theyr sleepe, whiche thyng for the most part commeth of the aboundance of foode, and ouermuch meate or drynkes, whiche for the copie and superfluitie thereof, can not be conuicte ne overcome of nature, wherfore necessarily it putrieth and corrupteth, the noysome and hydrous vapours wherof, flying vp to the head in time of slepe, causeth these terrible fantasies in the slepe. And thus may it be remedied. First take heede that ye lay not the chyld to slepe strayght after it hath fedde, and also let it lycke a little hony, swallowyng it downe, so that by it, such thinges the which be somewhat harde to digest and concocte, may the sooner be digested, and the refuse the more easly to descende into the guttes.

Item euery day geue to the Infant halfe a dram of the electuary called *Diamuscum* or *Diaplicis*. Also Triacle in this case is very good, taken with mylke, as saith Rasis.

* Agaynst issuyng forth of the fundement gutte.

Or the issuyng forth of this gut, when the chyld labourerh to ease it selfe: Take Myrtilles, Acorne cuppes, red Roses dried, burnt

The thyrde Booke.

burnt Hartes hornes, burnt Alome, Goates
hoofe, *Balaustium*, and Galles, of eche lyke muche,
and seeth all these together with water, so long
tyll the water haue receaued the strength of the
ingredience, & with this water, beyng warme,
washe the gut, and so conuey it into the body a-
gayne, as I taught you in the seconde booke.

¶ Agaynst Tenasmus.



Enasmus is a disease when the child
enforceth it self to the stoole, and
yet can do nothyng, the whiche
thyng oftentimes chaunceth to
chyl dren, most commonlye pro-
ceedyng of colde. Agaynste the
which, ye shall vse these remedies. Take garden
Cresses and Cummin seede, of eche lyke muche,
beate them together, and temper them with old
butter, and geue it to drynke to the chylde with
colde water.

Item, take Turpentine, and laye of it bypon
coales, whose fume let the chylde receaue be-
neath in the fundement, the fume beyng inclo-
sed rounde about with clothes.

Item take Tarre, and lyke wyse make fume
of it, recepyng the fume as before.

¶ Agaynst wormes in the belly.

Sometymes there breede wormes in the
guttis, of the byggenesse and quantitie
of such as are wont to be in olde Cheese,
called Mites, and some lyke lyce. And sometime
in the belly be engendred wormes, of the bygge-
nesse

The thyrde booke. Fol. Cxv.

nesse of earth wormes, called Cases. Agaynst these vse this remedie. Take the water of *Centumnodia*, and geue it to the chylde to dzyne with mylke.

Item take of whyte Corall, the scrapping of Iuery, of Hartes horne burnt, and of Ireos, of eche a scruple, of Sugar candy one ounce and an halfe, of the water of *Centumnodia*, so muche as shalbe sufficient to temper all these thynges before, & of this make suppositaries, ministryng to the chylde euery daye the wayght of two drammes.

Other wyse accordyng to Ralis mynde: Take of Cummin seede as muche as shalbe sufficient, and temper it with Ore gall, makyng thereof a plaster, the which ye shall laye to the Infantes Nauyll.

Item oyle Olyfe taken and dronken a small quantitie therof, is very good to kyll all maner of wormes which breede in the gutte, neare to the fundement: Take the finest cotton, & therof make suppositaries, the which ye shall annoynt with the oyle of Wormewood, or of Rue, or of the kynelles of Peaches, or the oyle of bytter Almondes, and so to conuey it into the chylde's syttyng place.

Item it shall greatly profyte the chylde, yf it be washed in the water in whiche is sodden Wormewood, and the leaues of Peaches.

Item, an oyntment for the same. Take of Wormewood & of Lupines, of ech two drams, of

Siler

The chyldes Booke.

Siler montanum, Cummin, Cockle, Centorie, and *Centonicum*, and of Hartes horne burnt, of eche foure drammes, all these thynges beaten together, tempze them in the oyle of Wormewood, or of bytter Almons the waight of two ounces, puttyng to it foure drammes wayght of waxe, and make hereof an oyntment, and annoynt the chyldes belly therewith by the fyze, or in some warme place.

Item, take of Cockle two drammes, of wormewood and Masticke of eche one dram, of Aloes, red Corall, of eche two drammes, of *Coriander preparat*, vi. drammes, beate all these well together. Adde also to these, of Rye meale three ounces, of Lupines beaten to powder, vi. drammes, of Saffron two drammes, temper all these in two ounces of the iuyce of Rue, and foure ounces of the iuyce of Wormewood, or of the oyle of the same, and make hereof a plaster, and lay it vnto the chyldes Nauyll the breadth of a hande.

Item, geue the chyld the wayght of foure pence of the powder of *Aloes cicotrine*, with fayze water fyrst sodden and sweeted with Suger, or els with single beare, and this no doubt is so- ueraigne.

Item, agaynst the great and long wormes. Take of the iuyce of Wormewood, and of Dre gall, of both two ounces, of *Colocintbis* viii. drammes, temper all these well together, addyng to it a little wheaten meale, and make hereof a plaster, the whiche laye to the Nauyll of the chyld.

Item

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxvi.

* Item a bathe for the same.

Take wormewood and Gaules, and seeth them in water, and let the chylde be bathed in it by to the Nauell.

¶ Of chaufyng or gallyng in any place of the body.

Against gallyng or chaufyng of the chylde's skin, by reason of the acrimonie & sharpenes of brine or sweat: Take Mirtils and beate them to powder, and strewe therof on the place. Item, take of Irios, of the red Rose, of Cyprus, of *Tragacantum*, so muche as shalbe thought sufficient, and beate them all, or part of them, and strewe of the powder on the chaufed place.

Item, take of the oyle of Roses one ounce, of whyte frankencense one dramme, and melt these together, and then take. viii. graynes of Camphere dissolved in Rose water and myrte therewithall, and of al this make an oyntment, and annoynt the chaufed place therewithall.

Also *Vnguentum album*, and *Vnguentum rubrum* be good for this purpose.

Item, the decoction and fomentation with the water wherin Plantaine, knot grasse, dock rootes, or *Bursa pastoris* is sodden, is very good for the same.

* Of the fallyng sicknes.

Sometymes these Infantes be vexed and encombred with the fallyng sicknes, and that two maner of wayes. One is, that
it

The thirde booke.

it hath this disease strayght forth with the
byrth: Cause of the whiche, is colde and yll hu-
mours in the head and braynes. Another is,
that it taketh this infirmitie after the byrth by
some accidentall causes, in whiche case, yf it
leauē not the childe, being a man chylde, before
he be .xxv. yere of age, and the woman chylde,
about the tyme of haupng her fyrst flowres, yf
it forsake them not in this space, neither by the
myght of nature, neyther of medicines, then is
it lyke neuer to depart from them.

Agayne, yf this disease come not by nature,
but by some accidentall cause afterwarde, then
geue diligent heede that the Nurses mylke be
very good, and conuenient to the chyldes na-
ture. And for the same purpose, if necessitie re-
quire it, shalbe very good to purge and clense
the Nurses body with due & meete medicines,
and she must aloyde al such thinges the which
do coole and moysten, and to suffer the chylde
to receyue no more mylke at once, then it may
be able well to digest.

for falling
sicknes
take mouse
saue scythe
it in water
with sugar
for drynke
and make
a plaster
with honey

Against this cruell disease, aucthours much
commendē the roote of a Pionie, onely hanged
about the chyldes necke.

Item, the same roote dyled and beaten to
powder, and so oftentymes geuen to the chylde
to take, sometymes with drinke, sometymes
with potage, pap, or milke, or any other wayes.
Likewise the seede of Pionie is very good.

Farthermore powre nowe and then into the
chyldes nosethryls of oyle of Castoreum, or the oyle

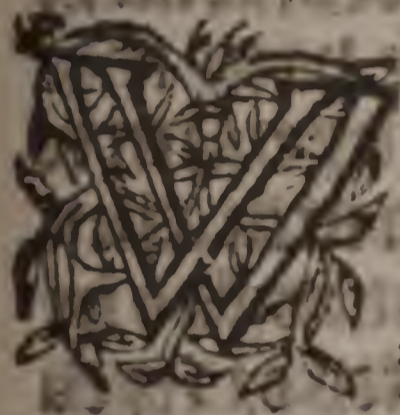
of
with honey and mustard, and bind to the head

The thirde booke. fol. Cxvii.

of *Coffus*, or of *Enforbium*: Also let the chylde smell to Rue and to *Asa fetida*.

Item, to hange *Viscum quersimam*, which is gathered in Marche the moone decreasyng, about the chylde's necke, is very good. Dyuers other thynges there be which myght be here rehearsed, but this shalbe sufficient at this time.

C Consumption or pynnyng away of the body.



When the Infant falleth away, and the fleſhe rebateth, remaynyng nothing but as it were ſkin and bone, and therby the chylde wareth ſicke: Then let the Infant be often bathed in water, in which hath ben ſodden the head and the feete of a weather, ſo long till the fleſhe part from the bones of his owne accorde, and euery tyme that the chylde commeth forth of the bath, fyrſt let it be wyped & dyled cleane, and then annoynte it with this oyntment. Take freſhe Butter, oyle of Violettes, and oyle of Roſes, of eche one ounce, of the fatte of freſhe Pork, halfe an ounce, of whyte waxe two drammes, melt all theſe thinges together, and make an oyntment of it, annoynting therewith the chylde's body.

Item, take white waxe, Swines greſe, Shepes tallowe, freſhe Butter, melt all theſe thinges together and ſtrayne them, makyng of it an oyntment, and annoynt the childe withal once or twyle euery daye. But the chiefe hope
of

The thirde booke.

of restauration, muste be in lyght, restorative
and pure nourishing meates.

* Of lassitude, wearynesse, or heauynesse
of the chyldes body.

Sometimes it chaunseth that the chyldes
members of the bodye be so feeble, as
though it had the paulsey, so that with
that partes of the body the childe can not helpe
it selfe, neither can it lift by the handes, armes,
ne stande on the feete. At the chylde haue this
disease whylest it sucketh, then let the Nurse
be comforted and strengthened with such thin-
ges, the which haue vertue to heate and to dry.
Also let the Nurse feede only on rosted or fryed
meates, and that she forbear from milke, fishe,
and harde or salt powdered fleshe, for commonly
this disease springeth of colde and moyste hu-
mours, besieging the sinewes.

Farthermore, let not the Nurse vse any wa-
tered wine, or mixed, but mere and in his owne
kynde, and let her bathe the chylde euer before
she geue it sucke, after, annoynting it with the
oyle of *Castorium*, or the oyle of *Costum*, and let the
chylde drinke every day a quantitie of this elec-
tuary folowynge.

Take garden Mynt, Cinamome, Cummin,
dye Roses, Mastick, Fenugreke *Valeriane*, *Amios*,
Doronicum, *Zedoarium*, Cloues, Saunders, *Xiloes*, of
eche a dram, of Muske halfe a dram, beate all
those to powder, and confict them with clari-
fied and depured honye, making thereof an
electuary,

The thyrde Booke. Fol. Cxviii.

electuarie, of the which euery day geue vnto the chylde the weyght of two pence to drynke with whyte wyne. If the chylde haue this disease in euery part of his body, then take an ounce of waxe and a dramme of *Euforbium*, the which *Euforbium* ye shall beate in a mortar with v. oz. vi. dropes of oyle, tyll it be perfectly beaten, then temper them together ouer the fyre, addyng ther vnto so much oyle as maye be sufficient to make a searecloth, and lay it to the raynes of the backe.

* Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the Palsy.

If the chylde happen to be vexed with tremblyng or shakynge of the body or the partes therof, so that ye feare the palsy of the same part, or that the falling sicknes shoulde ensue, then remedie it after this meanes. Take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Spykenarde, and temper them together, warmyng it, and therewith annoynt the backe or raynes, and the other shakynge members, ye may also take any other oyle the which hath vertue to warme and calefie, as the oyle of Bayes, and such other.

Item, to bathe the chylde in the decoction of Rosemary, Sage, Tyme, Flope, Sauery, Alexander, Smallage. &c. is very soueraigne. If you cannot cure it by this meanes, then demaunde farther counsaile of the Physitions.

The thyrd Booke.

¶ Agaynst the strangury oz stone, with stoppyng
of the brine.

Strangury, Diffury, and the difficultie in
makynge of water, oftentimes chaunce-
eth to chyldezen by reason of the stone, oz
aboundaunce of grauell, other els many times
of some other viscos, slymye, and fleumatyke
matter, in maner & fourme of dregges oz ragges
ouerthwartynge and crossing the passage, wher-
by the brine should passe forth, in such wise, that
(without great payne) the chylde can not make
his water, and that yet but in small quantitie
at once.

Whiche of these wayes so euer it come, it shal-
be very good to bathe the chylde vnto the Na-
uyll in the decoction of paritorie of the wall,
Mallowes, Holyoke, Lyneseede, Lylly rotes,
fenegreke, & Sauery, other els with a sponge
oz double linnen cloth dyped therein, estsones
to foment the share and nether part of the belly
agaynst the bladder.

But in men chyldezen chiefly foment them
on the straighes, betwene the fundement and
the coddes, the whiche place in Latin is called
Perineum, for there in them lyeth the necke of the
bladder. After this bathynge oz fomentation,
dye the places fomented, and whylest they be
yet redde with bathynge, annoynt them with the
oyle of scorpions, to be had at the Apothecaries,
oz els the oyle called *Petroleum*.

And yf farther nede shall require it, ye maye
applie

applie this plaster folowynge to the foresayde places. Take of Parsley, and of Alexander, of eche halfe an handfull, of Paritorie, Wallowes, Holyoke rotes, of eche an handfull, sceth these hearbes together in good stale ale, tyll suche tyme as they be softe, then powre out the ale from them, and stampe the hearbes in a stone mortar, addyng therunto of the seedes of fenegreke and Line, of eche halfe an ounce, beyng fyrst beaten to subtyll powder.

Item of Cummin seede the wayght of foure grotes, beaten lyke wyse to fine powder, of the oyle of Scorpions, *Petroleum*, or other appertyffe oyle one ounce and an halfe, of all these well commixed together, make a plaster, and laye to the places aforesayde. To speake of any medicines to be administred in wardes, it is but folye, for so much as it is so harde to cause a chylde to take any thyng within forth.

This difficultie in makynge water, maye ensue by other meanes, whereof we neede not to speake at this tyme.

¶ Of goggle eyes or lokyng a squint.

If the chylde haue goggle eyes, or that it loke a squynt, then firste set the cradell in suche a place that the lyght maye come directly and ryght in the chylde's face, neyther in the one side, neyther in the other, neyther aboue the head, lest it turne the syght after the lyght. Also marke on which side that the eyes do goggle, and let the lyghte come vnto it on the

The thyrde Booke.

contrary syde, so to retorne the syght. And in the nyght sealon set a candell on the contrary syde, so that by this meanes, the goglyng of the eyes may be returned to the ryght place. And further it shalbe good to hang clothes of diuers and freshe colours on the contrary syde, and specially of the colour of lyght greene, or yelowe, for the chylde shall haue pleasure to beholde these straunge colours. And in returnyng the eye syght towarde such thynges, it shalbe occasion to rectifie the syght agayne. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, of the diseases of children after they be bozne, makyng here an ende of this thirde booke for this tyme.

[Faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page]

[Faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page]

The fourth booke. fol. Cxx.

Of such thynges the whiche shalbe entrea-
ted of in this fourth booke.

Capit. L

Here in this fourth booke
(by the leaue of God) shall
brieffly be declared suche
thynges whiche may far-
ther or hynder the concep-
tion of man, whiche as it may be by
dyuers meanes letted and hindered, so
also by many other wayes, it may be
farthered and amended. Also to know
by certayne signes and tokens, whe-
ther the woman be conceyued or no,
and whether the conception be male or
female, and finally certayne remedies
and medicines to farther and helpe
conception, and thereafter we will (ac-
cordyng to our promyse in the Pro-
logue) set forth certayne bellifping re-
ceptes, and so make an ende of this
whole treatise.

§ 3

Of

The fourth booke.

✧ Of conception, and howe many wayes it may
be hindred or letted. Cap. ii.

Here is nothing vnder heauen whiche so manyfest and playnely doth declare and shewe the magnificent mightines of the omnipotent liuing God, as doth the perpetuall and continuall generation and conception of lyuyng thinges here in earth, by the whiche is saued, prozaged, and augmented the kynde of all thinges. And where that this almightie Lord and creature hath so institute and ordayned, that no singular thing in it selfe (here vpon the earth) shoulde continuallye remayne and abyde, yet hath he geuen from the beginning and instincted suche a power and vertue vnto these mortall creatures, that they may engender and produce other lyke thinges vnto themselves, and vnto their owne similitude, in the which alway is saued the seede of posteritie. Were not this prouision had by almightie god, the nature and kynde of all maner of thynges woulde soone perishe and come to an ende, the whiche vertue and power of generation many times doth halt and misse, by defect and the contrary disposition in the partes generant.

As ye may euidently see in the sowyng of corne and all other maner of seede, so that there be in all maner of generation three principall partes concurrent to the same, the sower, the seede sown, and the receptacle or place receyuyng

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxi.

tyng and contaynyng the seede. If there be faulte in any of these thre, then shall there neuer be due generation, vnto suche tyme as the faulte be remoued or amended.

The earth vnto all seedes, is as a Mother and Nurse, contaynyng, clipping and embrasing them in her wombe, feedyng and fostering them as the Mother doth the chylde in her bellye or Matrix, vntyll suche tyme as they come vnto the growth, quantitie, and perfection due vnto theyr nature and kinde: But yf this seede conceyued in the bowels of the earth, do not proue or fructifie, then be thou sure that eyther there is let in the sower, in the seede, or els in the earth.

The earth may be ouer wateryshe, dankishe, or ouer hoate and dry, or els full of stones, grauell, or other rubbish, or ful of yll wedes, which may strangle and choke the good corne in his growyng, also the seede may be putrifid, or otherwise viciate and corrupted, and so the life and spirite of it banished away and destroyed. The sower may vnoordinately strewe and caste the seede on the earth. &c. So that yf there be let in none of these three partes concurrent to generation, or that the lettes be remoued and done away, then doubtlesse wyll ensue multiplication and encreasement of that kynde, of the whiche the seede cometh, accordyng to the naturall enclination, the whiche almighty God hath enplanted and set in the kynde of all thinges.

The fourth booke.

Howe many wayes conception may be letted,
and howe the causes may be knowen.

Capit. iii.



Every thyng then the whiche doth encrease in this kinde, must first be conceived in the wombe and Matrix of the Mother, whiche is apte and conuenient for the receate of such seede. And as I sayde before, as there may be defect and lacke in the Mother receyuyng the seede, so may there be fault and defect in the sower, and in the seede it selfe also.

And in woman there may be foure generall causes, by the whiche the conception may be impedit and let, ouer muche caliditie or heate of the Matrix, ouermuch coldnes, ouermuch humiditie or moystnes, and ouermuch drynes. Any of these foure qualities exceedyng temperancie, may be sufficient causes to let due conception.

Wherfore the ryght excellent Philition *Hipocrates* in the .v. booke of his *Amphorismes* saith: All suche women the whiche haue colde and dense Matrices, cannot conceyue, and suche as haue moyste and waterythe Matrices can conceyue, for the powre of the seede is extinguisht in it. Also hauing dry Matrices, conceyue not, for the seede perissheth for lacke of due nutriment and foode, but that Matrix the whiche hath all these qualities in temperancie, that is fruitefull. This is *Hipocrates* saying, the which thing

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxii.

thyng also may be well perceyued by a familier example of the sowynge of corne.

For yf it be sowed in ouer colde places, such as be in the partes of a countrey, called Sithia, and in certayne places of Almayne, or in suche places where a continuall snowe or froste, or where the Sunne doth not shyne, in these places the seede or grayne sowed, wyll neuer come to profe, nor fructifie, but through the vehement coldnesse of the place, in the which it is conceyued, the lyfe and quickenes of the grayne is vtterly destroyed and adnihilate.

And farther as concernyng ouer muche humiditie, yf ye sowe your grayne in a fen or marishe, and waterie groundz, the seede wyll perishe through the ouer muche aboundaunce of water, whiche extinguissheth the liuelynes and the naturall power of the grayne and seede.

Likewise yf it be sowed in suche a countrey or place where is ouer great heate, not tempered with water and rayne, or yf the yere be so dry, that there come no rayne at all to alay the extreme and feruent heate of the Sunne, then shall the seede sowed wyther and dye awaye, and the power of it be consumed and burnt.

Also yf it be sowed in drye places, where neuer commeth rayne, or on the sande, and grauely places, in suche a place the grayne can neuer take, ne proue, ne be conceyued in it, to come to any fruite or profite.

Wherefore yf the Matrix be distempred, by
the

The fourth booke.

the excesse of any of these foure qualities, then must ye reduce it agayne to temperauncie, by suche remedies as I shall shewe you hereafter. Likewise may there be defect and lacke in the man, as yf the seede be ouer hotte, the whiche the woman shall feele as it were burnyng hot, or to colde, the whiche she shall feele as it were in maner colde as yse, or to fluye or thinne. &c. Diuers other wayes also it may be letted, whiche shall not nede here to be rehearsed.

Nowe yf the woman can not conceyue, the cause commyng of ouermuch frigiditie or coldnesse in the Matrix, that shall she knowe by these tokens. She shall feele great colde about the sydes, the raynes of the backe, and the Matrix, her brine shall appeare whyte and thynnysh, and sometimes also som what spisse and thicke, and all maner of colde thynges shall noy her, hotte thynges shall greatly comfort her.

But if it come by ouermuche humiditie of the Matrix, that shall she know by these signes. If the body of her be of a fat and grosse disposition, yf with her flowres issue forth at the beginning and the latter ende of them certayne viscus and watery substaunce, and that her bryne be whyte, thicke, and sometyme as it were mylke. Also that she feele great colde and payne about the Matrix and priuie partes, and much dolour in her sides, and in the raynes of her backe.

And when ouermuch heate or dryeth in the Matrix is cause of the hynderaunce of conception,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxiii.

tion, then is the bryne hye coloured, red or yelowe, beyng thinne, with certayne motes appearing in the water, the woman hath great thyrst, and bytter rylsng or belchynges out of the stomacke into the mouth. And many times they that are in this case, are very spare and leane in all theyr body, hauyng also but small quantitie of flowres, the whiche thyng may happen eyther by ouer much watche, or ouer much fastyng, labour, trauayle, sorowe, sicknesse, &c. But suche women whiche naturally are thus spare and leane, may very hardly be brought to a temperancie agayne, and be made apte to conceyue. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, to knowe whiche qualitie by his excelle causeth sterilitie. Nowe wyll we shewe howe it shalbe knowen, whether lacke of conception be in the woman, or els in the man, and howe to knowe whether the woman be conceiued or no, according to the minde of right experte Physitions,

¶ Howe to knowe whether lacke of conception be of the woman or of the man, and howe it may be perceyued whether she be conceyued or no. Cap. liii.



If ye be desirous to know whether the man or the woman be hinderaūce in conception; Let eche of them take of wheate

The fourth booke.

wheate and Barlye cornes, and of Beanes of eche. vii. the which they shall suffer to be steeped in theyr seuerall brine the space of. xxiiii. houres then take two pottes, suche as they set Gyliflowres in, fill them with good earth, and in the one let be set the wheate, Barlye, and Beanes, steeped in the mans water, and in the other the wheate, Barlye, and Beanes steeped in the womans water, and euery mornynge the space of. viii. or. x. dayes, let eche of them with theyr proper brine, water the said seedes sown in the foresayde pottes, and marke whose potte doth proue, and the seedes therein contayned doth growe, in that partie is not the lacke of conception, and see that there come no other water or rayne on the pottes, but trust not much this farre set experiment.

Item, accordyng to *Hipocrates* wytyng, yf ye wyll knowe whether the faulte be in the woman or no, then let the woman receyue into her body vnderneath, beyng well and closely closed rounde about, the fume of some odoriferous perfume, as *Laudanum*, *Storax calamite*, *Lignum Aloes*, *Muske*, *Ambre*, and such other, and yf the odour and sauour of such thynges ascende thoro we her body by vnto her nose, ye shall vnderstande, that sterilitie commeth not of the womans part, yf not, then is the defect in her.

Item, yf she take Garlicke beyng pilled out of the huskes, and conuay of it into the priuie partes, and yf the sent of it ascende by the thoro we the body vnto the nose, the woman is faultlesse,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxiii.

faultlesse: yf not, then is ther lacke in her. These tokens, although they haue a certayne reason and apperaunce, yet be they not alwayes vnfalible, but only lykely.

Whether she be conceaued alredy or no, ye shall knowe by these signes. First, the flowres issue not in so great quantitie as they are wont, but waxe lesse and lesse, and in maner nothyng at all commeth from them. Also the brestes begyn to waxe rounder, harder, and styffer then they were wont to be, the woman shall long after certayne thynges, otherwyle then she was vsed to do before that tyme. Also her brine waxeth spylle and thychke by retention of the superfluities. Also the woman feeleth her Matrix very fastlye and closely shutte, insomuche that as Hipocrates sayth, the poynt of a needle maye scace enter.

Item, to knowe whether she be conceaued or no, accordyng to Hipocrates mynde, in the .v. of his Ampho. Geue vnto the woman when she is goyng to bedde, a quantitie of *Mellicratum* to drynke, and yf after that drynke she feele great payne, gnawynge, and tumblyng in her bellye, then be ye sure that she is conceaued. This *Mellicratum* is a drynke, made of one part wyne, another part water, sodden together, with a quantitie of hony.

But yf ye be desyrous to knowe whether the conception be man or woman, then let a droppe of her mylke or twayne be mylked on a smothe glasse, or a bryght knyfe, other els on the nayle
of

To knowe
whether the
woman be
conceaued,
or no.

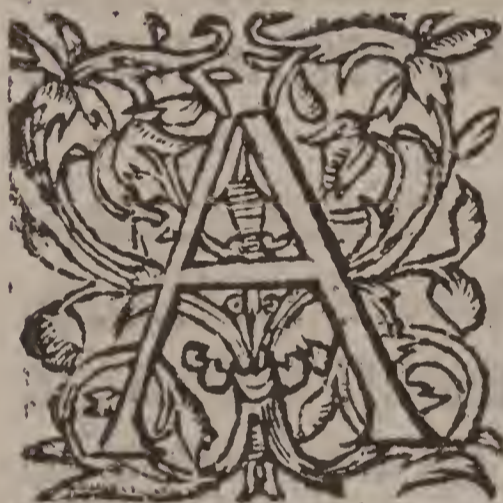
Top

The fourth Booke.

of one of her fyngers, and yf the Mylke flewe and sprede abrode vpon it by and by, then is it a woman chylde, but yf the drop of Mylke continue and stande styll vpon that the which it is mylked on, then is it a signe of a man chylde.

Item if it be a male, then shall the woman with childe be wel colored, and lyght in going, her belly round, bigger towarde the rightside, then the left (for commonly the man chylde lieth in the ryghte side, the woman in the lefte side) and in the time of her bearing she shall better digest and lyke her meate, her stomacke nothing so queasy ne feeble.

C Of certayne remedies and medicines which may farther the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.



A sterilitie then for the most part ensueth & cometh of the distemperancie of one of these foure forenamed qualities, wherefore the remedie and cure of the same when it chaunceth, must be done by such thinges the which haue contrary power and operation to the excessive qualitie, for by that shall it be reduced to his temperancie againe.

As yf that coldnesse and moistnesse excedding temperancie in the Matrix be occasion of sterilitie, then must she applye suche thynges to that place the which be of nature hot and drie, the whiche maye califie and warme the place, and also drye vp the yll moistnes and humours

conteyned in the same, hyndering conception.

And forbecause that the moſte generall and common cauſe of ſterilitie doth proceade of cold, wateriſhe, and flegmaticke humours, whiche bedewyng the innerſydes and holonneſſe of the Matrix, with the port and mouth thereof alſo, cauſeth that the ſeede ſent from the man into the womans wombe or Matrix, can not there remayne ne cleaue, neither is the mouth or port of the wombe apte or able to cloſe it ſelfe ſufficiently after the reception of the ſeede, the flewomie and ſlimie humours withſtandynge it, the which vnleſſe they be diſcuſſed, or dyled awaye, the ſeede alwaye ſlyppeth and ſydeth forth as faſt as it entreth in.

Wherfore to remedie and to do awaye the foreſayde impediment, ye ſhall uſe the meanes whiche foloweth.

Fyrſte, within a day or two after the womans Termes be paſſed, let her by the aduyce of ſome Phiſition take a purgation, whiche may purge flewome and wateriſhenes, and then the next or the thirde day after, let her ſyt in a bath bp almoſt to the Nauyll, in the whiche bath ye ſhall decocte and ſeeth theſe hearbes folowynge. Take of Bay leaues, Malloves, redde Myntes, Mirtilles, Camomell, Maioram, Marygoldes, of eche an handfull, of Sage thre handfulls, of Mercurie and Brankurſin of eche two handfulls, ſeeth all theſe hearbes together in fayre water, or (yf it were for a noble woman) in halfe water and the other halfe redde wyne,

The fourth Booke.

wyne, in this bath let her remayne the space of a good halfe-houre, and a little before that she come forth of the bath, geue her to drinke of this electuary folowynge.

Take of Spyke, Nutmegges, Cloues, Gallyngale, Cinamome, and long pepper, of eche the wayght of a grote, of Annis seede the wayght of two grottes, of Sage leaues dzyed the wayght of thzee grottes, all these thynges (eche by them selues) beaten to small powder, temper them altogether in so much pure claryfyed hony, as maye be sufficient to receyue all the powder, other els commixt with this powder so muche fine Suger as the wayght of the powder amounteth vnto, whereof ye shall geue vnto her at once the wayght of two grottes, with .viii. .ii. .oz. .x. sponefulles of good whyte oz claret wyne, other els with good Maluesey oz Muscadell.

And all this must be done eyther fastyng in the mornynge one houre before breakfast oz dyner, other els .v. .oz. .vii. houres after dyner, so that it be not done vpon a full stomacke. But yf ye take the bath and the electuarium in the mornynge, then at nyght thzee oz foure houres after supper, let her receyue vnderneath her clothes, the vapour of these thynges folowynge into the priuitie. Take of Lauender dzyed, of vnset Tyme, Bay berryes, Fute leaues, of eche halfe a little handfull, of whyte Frankencense the wayght of foure grottes, of Sage dzyed, oz other two little handfulles of Rosemary leaues

leaves one handfull, seeth these together in fayre water, and when they be perfectly sodden, then let the woman set her selfe ouer the vapour therof, sitting grouelyng, other els set on a couer made for the nonce with a tunnell or conduite, thoro we the whiche the vapour may be directed in the womans priuie passage, the nere thereby, that the bertue thereof may approche vnto the wombe or wombe port.

Ye may also in the same water dyp wooll, or els fine linnen cloutes, and so conuay it into the priuie passage, ther to remayne the space of one or two houres. This bath, electuary, and vapour, I counsell them that haue nede to vse them the space of thre dayes continually, and then the thyrde nyght to companye with her husbnde, and by the grace of God she shalbe sped. There be sometymes, that with the vse of the bath only, or the electuary alone, eyther the vapour, without any farther remedye haue ben aptified to conception, but who that vseth it as is aboue mentioned, worketh the surer way.

These shalbe sufficient remedies for want of conception, proceadyng of colde, moyste, and fleigmatike humidities. Nowe yf it come by any distemperancie in heate and dryeth, then let her be purged of coler, or other vnkynd heat bred in the body, by thynges apt and meete for that purpose, and then after ward to vse bathes electuaries, and vapours, of moderatly cooling thinges, as of Roses, Violets, Lettuse, Purs-
C I layne,

The fourth booke.

layne, Blantaine, and dyuers other.

But forasmuch that most commonly the bry-
apitude of conception (in women hauing their
health) springeth of the superfluitie of colde &
moyst humours (wherof we haue already spo-
ken) therefore all other impedimentes leste a
part, ye shall holde ye content with this for this
tyme. For yf I woulde make mention of all
the occasions, whereby conception may be let
or impeditte, then should I here alledge and
bryng in all the diseases that may happen to a
woman in that partes, with the remedies ther-
of, whiche were a long worke and not proper
for this volume.

* In this. vi. Chapter is entreated of diuers bel-
lifying receptes, as ye may here
after reade.

The embellishing or bellifying me-
dicines wherof I entende to speake
here, be not to be vnderstanden to
be of that sort whereby any Adstitti-
cious or outwarde forayne beautie
or set colours should be acquired or gotten, the
which far fet & dampnable curiositie, I doubt
not but that all honest and vertuous sadde wo-
men do vtterly abhorre and contempne: but
here mine only meaning is, to shew how to re-
moue certayne blemishes, & as it were weedes
of the body, through the whiche many tymes,
the naturall beautie therof is obscured and de-
faced. For as in a fayre Garden, be it neuer so
beauti-

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxvii.

beautifull, yet yf it be not regarded and looked vnto, the weedes entermynglyng them selues among the good hearbes, wyll defourme and emperyshe the good grace of them. For in the earth, be it neuer so well diligented and pyked, yet alwayes therin will remayne some sparkes and seedes of vnlooked for weedes, the whiche euer when time or season serueth, nature thrusteth forth.

Lyke wyle in the body of man, among the good and necessary humours, is some sparke or qualitie of ill and not necessary humours, with the which nature being offended and cloyed, expelleth and dryueth them forth, sometymes into one place, and sometymes into another, accordyng to the aptitude or feblenesse in resistance of the place receyuyng it, and the force or violencie of nature (therwith greued) sending it, so that the superfluities founde in the bypper part and face or superficie of the skin, ensueth by the superfluitie and dominion of lyke matter contayned and commixed in the baynes among the bloud, and is a great euidence and testimonie therof. But here I wyll not speake of all kindes of vtter diseases springing of this inwardes corrupted humours, but onlye of suche thynges as commonly chaunce to men and woman without any imperishment of theyr health.

As for example, first I wyll briefly declare the fylthynesse of the head, called in laten *Perrigo*,

The fourth booke.

in Englyshe, the Dandruffe of the head, the which is, when that in kembering and cratching of the head, certayne whyte scales, as it were bran, falleth of from the head, and lyeth verye thicke among and vnder the hayre.

* Of the causes and remedies of Dandruffe of the head.

The cause of this Dandruffe commeth by aboundance of fleumatike humours, commixt with the bloud, the which dayly and hourelly by vnseffible sweatyng, euaporateth and issueth forth of the poores, in the skinne that couereth the panbone, and as fast as it issueth forth, dryeth on the vtter superficie of the skyn, and there remaynyng and gatheryng together, becommeth euery day more and more, therto greatly helping the forest of hayre which couereth, harbereth and retayneth such superfluities, more in those places then in any other where no hayre groweth. And most commonly they that haue blacke hayre, haue more store of Dandruffe then other. This humour suffred ouerlong to raigne on the head, destroyeth and corrupteth the rootes of the hayres, makyng them to fall of in great plentie, and speciallye in kembering. And although this superfluitie be not clendly, yet notwithstanding it shall be no wysedome for me to teache, ne any other herewith encombred, to learne how to stoppe it, for feare of farther inconueniences, but onlye I counsell you once in then dayes at the least, to washe

The fourth Booke. Fol. Cxxviii.

washe and scoure the head cleane with good lye wherin let be steeped in a lynnē bagge of Annis seede, Cummin, dyled Rosemary, fenugreke, and the ryndes of Pomegranate, of eche lyke much: and beware that after the washyng of your heade ye take no colde, before the heade be perfectly dyled.

And wheras some say, that they which vse ofte washyng of theyr heades, shalbe very prone to head ache: that is not true, but only in such that after they haue ben washed, roll by theyr hayre (beyng yet wet) about theyr heades, the colde wherof is daungerous to bryng them to Catarrhes and pooles, with other inconueniencies. Wherfore all diligence must be had, that the head may be exactly well dyled with warm clothes, whylest the head is yet hotte of the washyng, and then neuer feare no inconueniencies, but rather conuenience and commoditie: & let this be done also fastyng in the mornyng, or els one houre before supper, or .v. houres after supper: this oft washyng shall purysye the skyn of the headde, and stedfast the hayre from fallyng, leuiate and lyghten the head, with all the sences therin conteyned, and greatly comfort the braynes.

To take away hayre from places where
it is vnsemely.

Item, sometymes hayre groweth in places vnsemely, and out of order: as in manye maydens and women the hayre groweth

The fourth Booke.

so lowe in the foreheades and the temples, that it disfigureth them: for this ye maye vse three wayes to remoue them, eyther to pluck by one after another with pincers, such as many women haue for the nonce, eyther elles with this lye folowynge. Take newe burnt Lynne foure ounces, of Arsenicke one ounce, stipe both these in a pynt of water the space of two dayes, and then boyle it from a pynt to the halfe.

And to proue whether it be perfecte, dyp a feather therin, and yf the plume of the feather depart of easely, then is it strong ynough, with this water then annoynt so farre the place that ye woulde haue bare from hayre, as it lyketh you, and within a quarter of an houre plucke at the hayres, and they wyl folowe, and then washe that place muche with water wherein bran bath ben stiped: and that done, annoynt the place with the whyte of a newe layde egge and oyle Olyfe, beaten and mixt together with the iuyce of Singrene or Purslayne, to alaye the heate engendred of the foresayde lye. The thyrde way to remoue hayre, is with a plaster made of very drye pytche, and vpon leather applyed to the place, the hayres beyng fyrste shauen, or cutte as neare as can be with a payre of Cysars.

Nowe when the hayres be by by the rootes, then to let them that they growe no more: take of Alome the wayght of a grote, and dissolue it in two sponefulles of the iuyce of Nyghtshade, or of Henbane, and therewithall annoynte the
place

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxix.

place two or three tymes euery day, the space of ix. or. x. dayes, and hayre wyl growe no moze in that place.

To do away Frekens or other spottes
in the face.

These frekens and suche other spottes in the face or other where in the body, may be taken away by often annoynting the with the oyle of Carter, to be founde alwayes at the Apothecaries, and suerly that oyle is so ueraigne for that purpose.

Item, take Eleborus, and seeth of it an ounce in halfe a pynt of strong whyte Winegre, tyll halfe be consumed, then myrte therwith Honny three sponefulles, and the wayght of a peny of Mercury sublimid, (to be had at the Apothecaries) and seeth these together agayne tyll it become thicke: with this annoynt the frekens, and it wyl destroy them. This is also very good for the Morphewe, and other discoloration or staynyng of the skyn.

To destroy Wartes and such lyke excrescences
on the face or els where.

For this purpose nothyng is so excellent as euery day once, the space of thre or four dayes, to droppe one droppe of strong water, called *Aqua fortis*, on them, for this destroyeth them in very short tyme.

Item the iuyce of a red Onion, and the iuyce of Marygoldes is very good for the same.

Item, dissolve a lyttle Mercury sublimid in
fayre

The fourth Booke.

faire water, & therewith drop the wartes, and they wyll sone wyther and consume away.

C To cleare and claryfye the skin in the handes, face or other part of the body.

This is nothyng better then to take one sponefull of the oyle of Tarter, and sixe sponefulles of water, with these commixed together, washe the handes, face, and other partes, for it scoureth, clenseth and purifyeth the skyn soueraignely, and wyll suffer no fylthynes to remayne in the poores of the flesh, and this oyle of Tarter is made on this wyse. Take wyne lyes dyled, the whiche the Golde Smythes do call Arguyl, and beate it into powder, and then fyl therof a Goldsmythes crudible, and set it among hoate coales, tyll the Arguyl begyn to ware blacke: then take it out of the fyre and lette it coole, and bynde it in a linnen cloute, and hange it a lyttle ouer the vapour of hoate boylunge water: that done, hang this cloute with the Arguyl in a glasse with a broade mouth, so that the bagge or clout touch not the bottome of the glasse, and the water or oyle called Tarter wyll droppe downe a lyttle and lyttle: and the soner, yf it stande in a very colde and moyst sellar.

Item to scoure the handes & the bodye, some vse to washe theyr handes with the powder of Ores, which is the roote of the blewe floure, deluce, and some with Beane floure.

Item, the yolke and whyte of egges is good for that purpose, and so is hony.

C To

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxx.

* To souple and mollifie the ruggednes
of the skinne.

Annoynt the skyn with the Oyle of sweete
Almons, the same is verye good also for
chippinges of the lippes or handes.

Item, Deere suet is verye proper for the same
purpose, especially being well washed and tem-
pered with Rose water, wherein hath ben dis-
solved two or thre graynes of pure Muske.

C Against sodayne rylnges of pimples, thzough vn-
kinde heate, in the face or els where.

Take the white of an egge, and beate it wel
with a sponne, and then therwith commire
two sponnefull of Salet oyle, one sponne-
full of Rose water, another of the iuyce of So-
rell, & halfe a little sponnefull of Vineger, here-
with annoynt the pimples and rylnges.

* To kepe and preserue the teeth cleane.

If first yf they be verye yelow and fylthy, or
blackyshe, let a Barber scoure, rubbe, and
pike them cleane and whyte, then after
to maintayne them cleane, it shalbe verye good
to rubbe them euery day with the roote of a
Mallowe, & to pike them cleane that no meate
remayne and putrisie betwene the teeth.

Item, take of the small whyte pybble stones
whiche be founde by the water sides, and beate
thē in verye smal powder, hereof take an ounce,
and of Masticke one dram, mingle them toge-
ther

The fourth booke.

ther, and with this powder once in .xiiii. dayes rub exactly your teeth, and this shall kepe your teeth fayre and whyte, but beware ye touche not ne bere the gummes therewithall.

Item, to stable and stedfast the teeth, and to kepe the gummes in good case, it shall be very good every day in the mornynge, to washe well the mouth with red wine.

¶ Of stynkyng breath.

Stinck of the breath commeth eyther by occasion bred in the mouth, or els in the stomacke. If it come from the stomacke, then the body must be purged by the farther aduise of a Physition. If it be engendred in the mouth only, then most commonly it commeth of some rotten and corrupted holowe teeth, which in this case must be plucked out, and the gummes well scoured and washed with Vinegre wherein hath ben sodden Cloues and Nutmegges. The cleanly keepynge of the teeth doth conferre much to the sauerinesse of the mouth.

¶ Of the ranke sauour of the arnehole.

This vice in many persons is very tedious and lothsome, the remedie whereof is, to purge fyrst the colericke and egre humours, originall causers of the same, and afterwarde to washe the arneholes oftentimes with the water wherein wormwood hath ben sodden together with Camomell, and a lyttle quantitie of Blome.

Item,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxxi.

Item, Aucthours do wyte, that the rootes of Artichantes (the pyth pyked out) sodden in whyte wyne & so dronke, doth clense the stench of the armeholes and other partes of the body by the brine. For (as Galen also doth testifie) he prouoketh copy and plentie of stynkyng and vnclauery brine from all partes of the body, the whiche propertie it hath by speciall gyfte, and not only by his hoate qualitie. And thus here I make an ende of this fourth and last booke.

FINIS.

1565.



Handwritten text in a cursive script, likely a historical document or letter. The text is faint and difficult to decipher but appears to be organized into several lines or paragraphs. Some legible fragments include "1717" and "1718".

1717

1718

1719

1720

1721

1722

1723

1724

